



OWNER'S HANDBOOK

Welcome

Before embarking on the journey of Lotus, it is recommended that you read the vehicle's user manual to understand all the information required for vehicle use; The more you know about this car, the more it will help you familiarize yourself with driving skills, enjoy driving safety and fun, maintain good vehicle condition, and maintain better performance. In this manual, there are certain configuration contents described with a "*" symbol. If there are differences with the vehicle you purchased, please refer to the actual vehicle. Lotus Cars reserves the right to make changes, supplements, or terminations to the content and technical specifications of this manual at all times. This manual only describes the basic information of the vehicle, basic operations for use, and corresponding precautions and warnings.

Welcome to the Lotus family.

Table of Contents

Introduction		Using the seat belts correctly	29
- Introduction		Airbag introduction	33
User notice Prompts and illustrations Vehicle scrapping Vehicle accessories Event data recorder (EDR) Contact Lotus OTA system upgrade Radio information Tire introduction Overview	12 13 13 14 14 15 15 16	Function of airbag Location of airbag Airbag deployment conditions Disabling of passenger front airbag Children in car Child passenger safety guide Child safety seat Child safety lock Life detection and care Lotus security system V	33 35 36 37 37 38 48 49 50
Front of vehicle · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	23	Charging ·····	54
Rear of vehicle · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	23	Charging cable	54
Internal ·····	24	Charging preparation	54
Safety		Charging guidance	59
			62
Seat belt	28	Key introduction Doors	62 70
Function of seat belt	28	Windows	82

Bonnet	86
Pedestrian protection control · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	88
Tailgate ·····	89
Steering wheel · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	95
Adjustment of steering wheel · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	95
Buttons on steering wheel	95
Steering wheel heating	99
Combination instrument	100
Instrument overview ·····	100
Indicators and warning lamps · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	104
Head-up display (HUD)	110
Lighting	113
Exterior lighting control · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	113
Interior lighting control	120
Wiper control · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	124
Wing mirror adjustment · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	127
Outside mirror adjustment	127
Inside mirror adjustment	138
Garage door opener(HomeLink)* · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	138
Seat	141
Front seat adjustment · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	141
Rear seat adjustment · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	144
Seat massage* ·····	149
Seat heating · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	150

Seat ventilation*	152
Air conditioner	154
Four-zone air-conditioner control system · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	154
Air outlet · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	164
Panoramic sunroof*	167
Wireless device charging · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	168
Car power ·····	171
12V power supply · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	171
USB-C port · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	172
Sun visors and vanity mirrors	174
Storage device · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	175
Centre armrest · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	184
Front centre armrest · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	184
Rear centre armrest · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	185
Towing mode*	186
Parking comfort · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	190
Drive	
Before you drive	195
Drive	196

Start ·····

Acoustic vehicle alerting system (AVAS) · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	203	Automatic speed limit alarm (ASLA) ······	249
Active rear spoiler*	203	Rear drive assist · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	253
Drive mode · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	206	Rear collision warning (RCW) · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	253
Air suspension · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	209	Blind spot detection (BSD) · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	255
Active air dam*	211	Rear cross traffic alert (RCTA) · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	25
Active rear diffuser*	212	Door opening warning (DOW) · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	259
Steering mode · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	213	Brake assist system · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	26
Driving mode · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	214	Comfortable brake stop (CST) · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	26
Active grille shutter (AGS)	215	Electronic stability control (ESC) · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	26
Tyre pressure monitoring system	216	Traction control system (TCS) · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	263
Safe parking · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	218	Brake assist system (BAS) · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	264
Braking system · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	219	Anti roll-over program (ARP) · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	264
Energy recovery · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	219	Hill start assist (HSA)	264
Auto hold · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	220	Lotus intelligent dynamic control (LIDC) · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	265
Electronic parking brake (EPB) · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	221	Electrical pad wear indicator (EPWI) · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	265
Oriving assistance system	221	Post impact control (PIC) · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	26
Sensors and cameras · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	221	Park assist system · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	26
Adaptive cruise control (ACC) · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	226	Parking assist (PA)*	26
Highway assist (HWA)*	232	Visual parking assist (VPA) · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	269
Forward drive assist · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	238	Autonomous parking assist (APA)* ·····	27
Autonomous emergency braking (AEB) · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	238	Remote parking assist (RPA)* ·····	275
Evasive maneuver assist (EMA)* ······	242	Driver fatigue detection	27
Front cross traffic assist (FCTA) · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	244	LOTUS HYPER OS	
Lane keeping assist (LKA)	246	LOTOS IIII LIK OS	

Notes to users · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	282	Scheduled maintenance · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	319
Central screen display · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	284	Warranty coverage · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	320
Start-up guidance · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	284	Warranty period · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	320
Desktop ·····	285	Service record · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	322
Shortcut panel · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	285	Change of ownership	326
Garage ·····	286	Change of ownership · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	326
Vehicle use preference funciton	286	Record of ownership change · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	326
Network settings · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	287	Storage and maintenance · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	326
Bluetooth settings · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	288	Battery	327
Android Auto ······	289	Tyre information · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	329
Apple CarPlay · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	291	Tyre wear · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	329
Application management	294	Seasonal tyres · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	330
Multimedia · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	295	Tyre chain · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	331
Sound ·····	296	Checking under the hood of the front compartment ······	332
Voice ·····	297	Coolant ·····	332
Phone ·····	299	Brake fluid · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	333
Navigation ·····	301	Windscreen washer fluid · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	334
Set up ·····	306	Pollen filter · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	335
OTA system upgrade operation	310	Inspection and replacement of wiper blade	335
Rear display · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	314	Exterior maintenance	337
Maintenance		Interior maintenance	341
		Precautions during run-in period · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	343
Necessity of maintenance · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	318	Emergency	
Daily maintenance · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	318		

Guidance for traffic accidents · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	346	VIN location · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
Emergency call · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	346	How to read VIN · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
Hazard warning device ·····	348	Drive motor model and number · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
Hazard warning lamps · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	348	Microwave window
Warning triangle · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	349	Data ······
High voltage system information · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	349	Dimension parameters
Vehicle lifting · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	352	Performance parameters
Jump starting · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	353	Weight parameters · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
Replace fuse · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	355	Drive motor parameters
Driver's tools	369	High voltage battery parameters · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
Quick temporary tyre repair · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	370	Seat parameters · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
Having your car towed · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	373	Wheel alignment parameters · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
Towing method · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	373	Rim and tyre specifications
Towing procedures · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	373	Braking parameters · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
Emergency rescue procedures · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	376	Fluid specification and capacity · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
PPE for rescue personnel	376	
Release method of high-voltage system · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	378	
No cutting area	379	
Rescue of wading vehicle	381	
Rescue of vehicle on fire	381	
Technical parameter		
Vehicle identification · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	385	
Vehicle nameplate	385	





User notice

This vehicle is an electric vehicle. Please follow the relevant warnings and instructions in the user manual (hereinafter referred to as this manual) during daily driving and maintenance to avoid vehicle damage and personal injury.

Please read this manual carefully before using the vehicle for the first time to get a preliminary understanding of your vehicle. Please be sure to maintain your vehicle in accordance with the maintenance information shown in this manual. If any abnormality is found during use, please contact your Lotus retailer in time.

The copyright of this manual is owned by Lotus. No part of this manual may be reproduced or duplicated without the prior written consent of the company.

This guide provides an overview of the vehicle's main features and controls, some of which are for reference only and may not belong to the vehicle. All the contents of the manual are the latest version. However, with the continuous update and optimization of the product by Lotus, your vehicle may differ from the description and images in this manual. Lotus reserves the right to make changes without notice, please read the E-manual in the central screen display (CSD) or mobile APP for the latest version of the handbook. The content, data, images, and explanations of this manual cannot be used as legal basis.

Your vehicle is equipped with a number of advanced driver assistance systems (ADAS) to provide an extra measure of safety. However, the ADAS are installed only to assist the driver. ADAS should not be solely relied upon or over-relied upon as they may not operate correctly under all driving, weather, traffic, or road conditions (as explained in the ADAS section of this handbook). The ADAS are not a substitute for the driver maintaining complete control of the vehicle at all times, watching the road with hands on the steering wheel. The driver shall be ready to take action and brake if neccessary, closely paying attention to the task of driving, and driving in a careful and responsible manner.

Warranty and maintenance information is also contained in this manual.

You can scan the quick response (QR) code to download the mobile APP.



Prompts and illustrations

Prompt information

⚠ Warning!

Personal injury

Used with the safety alert symbol to indicate a risk of death or serious injury for the driver, other vehicle occupants, other road users or bystanders.

L Caution!

Risk of vehicle damage

Messages are intended to help you avoid damage to your vehicle, other property or the environment.

① Note!

Helpful notes

Messages are intended to assist or guide the reader to other sources of information.

Illustration information

Symbols used in pictures or text of this manual:

- 1 : indicates the object and position.
- : indicates the specific position.
- : indicates a turning action.
- ': indicates the direction of motion.
- *: indicates that the described configuration is optional.

Vehicle scrapping

Vehicles or vehicle components that experience the following situations shall be scrapped in accordance with national environmental protection regulations and safety measures:

- Reached service life.
- No longer suitable for road use.

The disposal of scrapped vehicles or their components requires specific safety measures, such as the disposal of flammable and explosive components or high-voltage systems. Therefore, only authorized equipment can be used to handle scrapped vehicles or components.

⚠ Warning!

 Only authorized scrapped vehicle processing equipment can be used to handle scrapped vehicles or their components. When processing is required, please contact Lotus retailer. Batteries and high voltage batteries need to be handled by authorized processing agencies. When processing is required, please contact Lotus retailer.

High voltage battery recycling

The Lotus retailer will check the capacity and condition of the high voltage battery. The high voltage battery shall be recycled in accordance with applicable laws and regulations and combined with the market conditions at that time.

⚠ Warning!

- Do not dispose of or discard the used high voltage batteries to avoid accidental fire or serious pollution to the environment.
- Do not hand over waste high voltage batteries to other organizations or individuals. You will be held responsible for environmental pollution or safety accidents caused by unauthorized disassembly of high voltage batteries.
- If the traction battery is damaged, there may be a delayed risk of fire. In this case, it is necessary to place the vehicle or the damaged battery under surveillance in a dedicated and secure storage area so as to prevent the start of a fire.

Vehicle accessories

Lotus parts and accessories have been produced to ensure their safety and suitability for your vehicle. To ensure the reliability, comfort, and handling of the vehicle, Lotus recommends using original parts and accessories.

⚠ Warning!

Do not modify the vehicle or fit any unapproved accessories, as this may affect the manoeuvrability, safety or durability of the vehicle, and may violate local government regulations. Lotus will not be held responsible for any vehicle damage, performance problems or safety accidents caused by unauthorized modifications.

Event data recorder (EDR)

The event data recorder (EDR) can automatically record the vehicle operation information and the status information of vehicle safety systems within a period of time before and after an event, such as:

- Vehicle speed.
- Whether the brake pedal is depressed.
- Longitudinal acceleration.
- Driver seat belt status.

- Percentage of accelerator pedal position and fully open position.
- Power-on cycle in the event.
- Power-on cycle in reading.
- Complete status of event data record.
- Time interval between this event and the last event.

Collecting and analysing the vehicle status data recorded by the EDR can help to understand the relevant situation before and after the event.

The data recorded by the EDR needs to be collected using special diagnostic equipment connected to the vehicle. If necessary, please contact the Lotus Customer Care Centre for this equipment.

Lotus may use the data recorded by the EDR for engineering research, which will help Lotus to continuously improve product quality and safety. The data recorded by the EDR will not be disclosed to third parties except in the following cases:

- With the owner's consent.
- In compliance with the requirements of administrative and judicial authorities.
- In accordance with laws and regulations.

Contact Lotus

If you encounter any problems when using the car, you can contact us by scanning the following two-dimensional code:



You can also visit the website: qr.lotuscars/contact-centre

Lotus Cars Europe B.V.

Johan Huizingalaan 400 A 1066JS Amsterdam the Netherlands.

OTA system upgrade

Over-the-air (OTA) software upgrades are provided to enhance or improve existing vehicle systems and may provide new features or functionality. Lotus recommends that you should upgrade your car as soon as possible after receiving an upgrade notification message.

Please refer to **OTA system upgrade operation** (p.310) for specific operation and introduction.

Radio information

The relevant information of radio electronic components of this vehicle is listed below:

Compo nent name / Descri ption	Freq uenc y band	Ma x tra ns mit ted po we r	Manufacturer name	Manufacturer address
Tyre pressu re monito ring sensor	433. 92 MHz	0.0 00 12 W	Schrader electronics Itd	11 Technology Park, Belfast Road, Antrim, Northern Ireland, BT41 1QS, UK.
TCAM	698 Mhz- 5 GHz	1W	Neusoft Group (Dalian) Co.,Ltd.	No.901-7 Huangpu Road, Ganjingzi District, Dalian City, Liaoning P.R. China
Side obstacl e	76GH z-77 GHz	50 db m	WHST CO., LTD.	Factory 1, Wanchun High- tech Innovation

Compo nent name / Descri ption	Freq uenc y band	Ma x tra ns mit ted po we r	Manufacturer name	Manufacturer address
detecti on radar				Park, East District of Economic & Technological Development Zone, Wuhu, China
FMDA B amplifi er	A.FM: 87.5- 108M Hz B.DA B: 174.0 - 240 MHz	1.5 W	Fuba automotive electronics (suzhou) Co., LTD.	Building 16 No.859 Pangjin Road, Wujiang Economics & Technological Development Zone Jiangsu Province, China 215200
Occup ation detecti on radar	60G Hz-6 4GHz	20 db m	WHST CO., LTD.	Factory 1, Wanchun High- thch Innovation Park, East District of Economic & Technological Development Zone, Wuhu, Anhui, China

Compo nent name / Descri ption	Freq uenc y band	Ma x tra ns mit ted po we r	Manufacturer name	Manufacturer address
Flat antenn a	A.5G: 698- 960 MHz; 1,710 - 2690 MHz; 3,30 0- 5,00 OMH z; B.GN SS: 1,561 - 1,605 MHz; C.WIF I: 2,40 0- 2,50 OMH	2W	Shanghai rian antenna Co., LTD	No.376, Lane 1555, Jinshajiang West Road,Jiangqiao Town, Jiading District, Shanghai

Compo nent name / Descri ption	Freq uenc y band	Ma x tra ns mit ted po we r	Manufacturer name	Manufacturer address
	z; 5,150 - 5850 MHz; D.TP MS: 434± 1MHz			
BLE and NFC commu nicatio n modul e	2.4G Hz Bluet ooth	10d bm	Marquardt	Marquardt GmbH Schloss-str. 16, 78604 Rietheim- Weilheim, Germany
Ultra wide band antenn a	6- 8GHz	2W	Marquardt	Marquardt GmbH Schloss-str. 16, 78604 Rietheim- Weilheim, Germany

Compo nent name / Descri ption	Freq uenc y band	Ma x tra ns mit ted po we r	Manufacturer name	Manufacturer address
NFC reader	13.56 MHz	2W	Marquardt	Marquardt GmbH Schloss-str.16, 78604 Rietheim- Weilheim, Germany
Key fob	2.4G Hz, 6- 8GHz	5d bm	Marquardt	Marquardt GmbH Schloss-str.16, 78604 Rietheim- Weilheim, Germany
NFC reader (inside the car)	13.56 MHz	2.5 W	Changzhou tenglong autoparts Co., LTD	No.1 Tenglong Road Economic Development Zone, Wujin District, Changzhou, Jiangsu 213149, China
Phone wireles s chargi ng	wirel ess charg ing:1	≤2 4W	Changzhou tenglong autoparts Co., LTD	No.1 Tenglong Road Economic Development Zone, Wujin

Compo nent name / Descri ption	Freq uenc y band	Ma x tra ns mit ted po we r	Manufacturer name	Manufacturer address
	00- 148.5 KHz NFC:1 3.56 MHz			District, Changzhou, Jiangsu 213149, China
RADA R – LONG RANG E	76-77 GHz	50 db m	Freetech intelligent systems Co., LTD.	No.6 Building, No.420, Xingfa Road, Wuzhen Town, tongxang, Jiaxing City, 314501 Zhejiang P.R China
Garage door opener	433. 05M Hz-4 34.79 MHz, 868. 00M Hz-8 68.6 0MH	0.0 3m W 0.5 0m W 0.7 0m W	Gentex Corporation	600 North Centennial Street Zeeland MI 49464 USA

Compo nent name / Descri ption	Freq uenc y band	Ma x tra ns mit ted po we r	Manufacturer name	Manufacturer address
	z,868 .70M Hz-8 69.2 0MH z			
IVI modul e	2.4G Hz/ 5GHz	15 ~2 4 dB m	ECARX	1268 Kangqiao East Road, Pudong New Area, Shanghai

Tire introduction

Tire markings

Laws require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire.



- 1. Tire width: These 3 digits represent the width of the tire from one sidewall to the other sidewall (in millimeters).
- 2. Aspect ratio: These 2 digits represent the height of the tire sidewall, shown as a percentage of the tread width. Therefore, if the tread width is 205mm and the aspect ratio is 50, the sidewall height would be 102mm.
- 3. Tire structure: R represents the radial structure of the tire.
- 4. Hub Diameter: These 2 digits represent the diameter of the wheel hub in inches
- 5. Load index: These 2 or 3 digits represent the load capacity of each tire, this number is not always displayed.
- Rated speed: When specified, represents the maximum speed (mph or km/h) at which the tire can be used for prolonged periods.

 $Q=99mph(160km/h), & R=106mph(170km/h), \\ S=112mph(180km/h), & T=118mph(190km/h), \\ U=124mph(200km/h), & H=130mph(210km/h), \\ V=149mph(240km/h), & W=168mph(270km/h), \\ Y=186mph(300km/h), & (Y) = Maximum & speed (exceeding "Y" grade).$

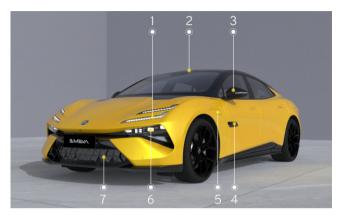
- Composition and material of tires: This digit represent how many layers of rubber coating materials are present in the tread and tire wall areas, and also identifies the type of materials used.
- Maximum tire load: The maximum weight that a tire can support.
- 9. Maximum allowable inflation pressure: This pressure should not be used for normal driving.
- 10. The Tire Identification Number (TIN) in the United States DOT: It starts with the letters DOT, represent that the tire meets all federal standards. The following 2 digits/letters represent the code of the tire manufacturing factory, and the last 4 digits represent the year and week of manufacture. For example, 1712 represents the 17th week of 2012. Other digits are marketing codes determined by the manufacturer. This information can be used to contact consumers when there is a defect in the tire that requires a recall.
- 11. Treadwear grade: This digit represents the rate of wear on the tire. The higher the treadwear number, the longer it will take for

- the tread to wear out. A tire with a grade of 400 will last twice as long as a tire with a grade of 200.
- 12. Traction grade: Represents the tire's ability to stop on wet slippery roads. Tires with a higher grade can help your vehicle come to a stop in a shorter distance compared to tires with a lower grade. Traction is ranked from high to low using the letters AA, A, B, and C.
- 13. Temperature grade: The tire's heat resistance level is graded as A, B, or C, with A representing the highest heat resistance level. A grade is provided by properly inflated tires, with both speed and load not exceeding the limits.





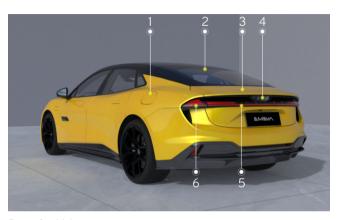
Front of vehicle



Front of vehicle

- 1. Integrated daytime running lamps(p.113)
- 2. Front LiDAR*(p.221)
- 3. Outside mirror(p.127)
- 4. Outside rear DVR camera(p.221)
- 5. Front side LiDAR*(p.221)
- 6. Hidden headlamp(p.113)
- 7. Active grille shutter (AGS)(p.215)

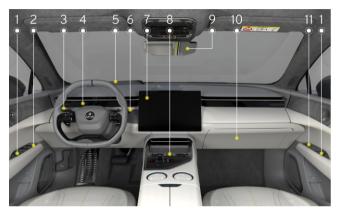
Rear of vehicle



Rear of vehicle

- 1. Integrated charging port(p.59)
- 2. High mounted stop lamp
- 3. Active rear spoiler*(p.203)
- 4. Rear LiDAR*(p.221)
- 5. Through-type RGB variable beam tail lamp
- 6. Rear position lamp/direction indicator lamp

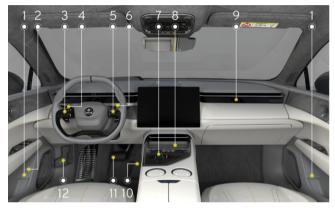
Internal



vehicle internal

- 1. Door opening/closing button(p.70)
- 2. Window control switch/child safety lock/door mirror adjustment switch(p.82)(p.48)
- 3. Exterior light switch
- 4. Driver instrument cluster
- 5. Head-up display (HUD)
- 6. Wiper combination switch
- 7. Centre screen display (CSD)

- 8. Combination switch(p.70)
- 9. Wing mirror
- 10. Glove box
- 11. Front passenger window control switch(p.82)



vehicle internal

- 1. Emergency door release handle(p.70)
- 2. Tailgate switch
- 3. Left hand keypad switches
- 4. Energy recovery paddle
- 5. Right hand keypad switches
- 6. Driving mode paddle
- 7. Gear selector

- 8. Wireless charging induction area
- 9. Passenger screen display
- 10. Accelerator pedal
- 11. Brake pedal
- 12. Bonnet opening handle



SAFETYI

Seat belt

Function of seat belt

Inertia reel seat belts allow forward movement of the upper body under normal driving conditions, but the belt will lock automatically during braking, acceleration, cornering forces, or on impact in a collision. Locking will also occur if the vehicle is tilted in any direction.

⚠ Warning!

- Never clip or attach the seat belt to other internal connectors, as this may cause the seat belt not to tighten properly.
- Seat belts are designed for adults, and in order to ensure the safety of children, children who are young (under 12 years old) or short (under 1.5 meters) should be seated in child safety seats.
- Only one person is allowed per seat belt, and one seat belt should not be shared between multiple people or children.
- Do not modify or remove the seat belt.
- Do not install equipment that may change the direction or tension of the seat belts. This may cause the seat belt to become stack and not provide maximum protection.

Seat belt check

Seat belt is important safety component, and improperly functioning seat belt may not provide you with adequate protection in the event of an accident, so please follow these steps to check your seat belt before each trip. If there is any abnormality, please contact your Lotus retailer for inspection.

- Check for twisted or dirty seat belt.
- Check seat belt for severe wear, cuts or burns.
- Insert the seat belt latch into the locking buckle, pull the latch in the opposite direction and check the seat belt buckle fixation.
- Quickly pull the seat belt and check the automatic retract and tension of the seat belt.

⚠ Warning!

- The front seats of this car are equipped with electric pretensioning and force-limiting seat belts. If you need to replace the seat belt, you need to replace it with a seat belt with the same function.
- Seat belts are important components to ensure personal safety.
 When replacing them, please use original or approved parts to better ensure the safety of passengers in the car.

Using the seat belts correctly

⚠ Warning!

When the vehicle is in motion, all occupants shall always fasten their seat belts, otherwise accidents or sudden braking may cause serious personal injury.

Before driving, ensure that the driver and passengers always wear seat belts and wear them properly.

Ensure that you are seated comfortably and the vehicle controls, foot pedals and steering wheel are within easy reach.



Seat belt not fastened

The reminder in the instrument display and a relevant message in the CSD, alerts unbelted occupants to wear a seat belt.

If all seat belts are worn properly but the reminder and alarm do not extinguish, then contact Lotus retailer immediately.

① Note!

When the seat belt reminder indicator is illuminated, stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and fasten seat belt.

Seat belt pretensioner

In the event of a collision (depending on the angle and severity of the collision), the seat belt pretensioner will automatically tension the seat belt to effectively hold the occupants in place and thus reduce the forward lean amplitude of the occupants.

When the seat belt pretensioner is deployed, a small amount of dust (smoke) will be released with a loud noise. Prolonged exposure to the smoke and dust from the pretensioner deployment may cause eve or skin irritation.

⚠ Warning!

 Do not touch the belt pretensioner after it detonates. After a collision, the pretensioner will become hot and may burn your skin.

- If your eyes and skin come into contact with the dust (smoke), rinse with water immediately.
- After an accident, if the seat belt tensioner is activated, it
 must be replaced; Airbags, seat belt tensioners, and other
 related components must be inspected at the Lotus retailer and
 replaced if necessary.

① Note!

- If the seat belt pretensioner and airbag are not activated in the event of a collision, the possible cause may be that the strength of the collision is not sufficient to activate them, rather than a malfunction
- The seat belt pre-tensioners will only activate once before a Lotus retailer must replace them.

Electric seat belt tensioners

The driver's and front passenger's seat belts are equipped with electric seat belt tensioners. The seat belt tensioners are activated during collision risks. In critical situations, such as if the vehicle brakes suddenly, begins to skid or runs off the road (e.g if the vehicle rolls into a ditch, lifts off the ground or hits an obstacle in the road), or if there is a risk of collision, the seat belts are pulled taut by the seat belt tensioner's electric motor.

The electric seat belt tensioner helps to position the occupant more effectively in the seat, which reduces the risk of the occupant striking the interior of the passenger compartment and improves the effect of other safety systems such as the airbags.

When a critical situation has passed, the seat belt and the electric seat belt tensioner are reset automatically. However, they can also be reset manually.

□ Caution!

If the passenger airbag is deactivated, the passenger-side electric seat belt tensioner is also deactivated.

Resetting the electric seat belt tensioners

The electric seat belt tensioners are designed to be reset automatically, but if the seat belt remains taut it can be reset manually.

- 1. Stop the vehicle in a safe location.
- 2. Unbuckle the seat belt and then rebuckle it.

The seat belt and the electric seat belt tensioner will be reset.

① Note!

If the electric seat belt tensioner is resetting failed, please contact Lotus retailer.

Wearing a seat belt

 Pull out the seat belt, pull it over the entire shoulder obliquely and then across the chest to ensure that the seat belt is flat without twist.



Wearing a seat belt

- 2. Press the seat belt latch into the buckle until you hear a "click" sound. Pull the latch to make sure it is locked.
- 3. Pull the shoulder belt upward to partially tighten the lap belt.
- 4. Press the red button on the belt buckle, then let the belt retract.



Seat belt buckle

⚠ Warning!

- The belt should be worn low across the front of the pelvis (not over the abdomen) and across the chest and shoulder.
- The seat back should not be tilted too far back. The shoulder belt must be taut in order to function properly.
- Improperly positioning the seat belts can cause serious injury or death in a crash.
- If you notice signs of wear, cracking or other damage to your seat belts, be sure to contact the Lotus retailer for replacement.

- Avoid contact with chemicals and liquid. If the seat belt cannot be retracted or it is locked in the buckle and cannot be removed, be sure to contact the Lotus retailer for repairs.
- Do not insert anything into the buckle except the seat belt latch intended for that buckle, otherwise the buckle may fail, reducing the protective effect of the seat belt, and causing serious injury.
- When the seat belt is not in use, it should be fully retracted and never draped. If the seat belt cannot be fully retracted, be sure to contact the Lotus retailer for an overhaul.
- People with disabilities should also wear seat belts. If there are special circumstances, consult a doctor for better advice.

Caution!

Before closing the doors, make sure that the doors will not catch the seat belt or latch to avoid damage to the vehicle, seat belt or latch.

① Note!

When you pull the seat belt over your body at a faster speed, it may cause the seat belt to be locked. In this case, just retract the seat belt to unlock it, and then slowly pull it over your body.

Fitting during pregnancy

Pregnant drivers should always wear seat belts to protect both themselves and their unborn child.



Fitting during pregnancy

Pull the seat belt over your chest and keep the lap belt as low as possible under the abdomen, so that the seat belt can fit closely with your body.

Pregnant women should adjust the position of the driver seat and steering wheel when driving the vehicle, and increase the distance between the abdomen and the steering wheel as much as possible, but ensure that the accelerator pedal, brake pedal and steering wheel can still be easily operated while driving.

① Note!

A doctor should regularly be consulted as to the advisability of driving during pregnancy.

Airbag introduction

Function of airbag

Airbags are important component of the safety system. In the event of a frontal collision, the frontal airbag can protect the driver and front passenger and avoid or reduce secondary collision injuries. In the event of a side collision, the curtain airbag and the side airbag can provide support and protection for the head, chest and hip, while the central airbag can prevent or reduce injuries suffered by the driver and front passenger due to collision. In the event that the vehicle rolls over, the curtain airbag helps protect occupants from being thrown out of the vehicle.

⚠ Warning!

If the airbag warning lamp \ref{stays} stays on after the vehicle is started, you must stop the vehicle at a safe place and contact the Lotus retailer.

⚠ Warning!

 Even if the airbags have not deployed after a collision. There could be internal damage to the safety systems, so be sure to go to the Lotus retailer for inspection.

- Drivers and passengers must keep a proper distance from the airbag to avoid injuries caused by too close a distance when the airbag is deployed.
- Always hold the steering wheel while driving the vehicle to minimize injuries to your hand or arm caused by airbag deployment.
- Never carry anything, children or pets in a front passenger seat.
- Do not install items such as navigation devices or mobile phone holders between the passenger instrument cluster and the front windscreen, and do not lean body parts such as legs or feet against the passenger instrument cluster.
- Do not install radio equipment within the deployment range of the airbag to avoid radio signals affecting the normal deployment of the airbag.
- Do not attach cushion covers or other item to the front seats, which may reduce the performance of side airbag deployment.
- Do not vigorously tap the airbag area in the centre of the steering wheel.
- Do not attempt to disassemble or remove the steering wheel.
- Do not attempt to change or interfere with any airbag or safety system wiring or components.
- Individual components of the airbag system may be hot after airbag deployment. There is a danger of injury. Do not touch individual components.

Airbag warning sign

There are airbag warning signs on both sides of the passenger sun visor, reminding you never put a rear-facing child seat in the front passenger seat, death or serious injury to the child can occur.





Location of airbag



Frontal airbag

- 1. Driver frontal airbag
- 2. Passenger frontal airbag



Side airbag

- 1. Passenger side airbag
- 2. Curtain airbag
- 3. Driver side airbag
- 4. Central airbag

Airbag deployment conditions

In a severe frontal collision, the airbags inflate in a fraction of a second to provide protection for the upper body of the occupants. Dependent upon the angle of collision (front or near frontal) the driver and passenger airbags may activate without activating any other airbags.

⚠ Warning!

Airbags may produce dust (fumes) when deployed. If the eyes or skin are exposed to dust (fumes), please immediately rinse with clean water, as prolonged exposure may cause discomfort.

Cases when airbags may not be deployed

Airbag deployment depends on the severity of the impact detected by the collision sensor at the time of the collision.

Airbags may not deploy in any of the following situations:

- In case of rear-end collision, side collision or roll-over, the frontal airbags may not deploy.
- If the deceleration or braking force does not meet the airbag sensor trigger condition, the airbag and curtain airbag may not unfold. Such collisions include impacting a flexible object (such as a snow pile or bush), or into an object at a low speed, and the collision of two vehicles driving at relatively low speeds.
- If the vehicle collides with the underbody of a large vehicle, such as a container lorry.
- Supplemental restraint system (SRS) has failed.

Disabling of passenger front airbag



The passenger front airbag is turned on by default, and when the front passenger seat has a reverse-mounted child seat, a vehicle crash can cause personal injury and unnecessary financial loss when the airbag pops out. When installing the child safety seat in the passenger seat, be sure to click the icon in the centre stack display and select Safety to manually turn off the front passenger airbag.

⚠ Warning!

- Never use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat when the airbag is activated, otherwise, death or serious injury can occur.
- Do not sit on the front passenger seat (adults and children) if the passenger airbag is deactivated.



Front passenger airbag indicator

- 1. The front passenger airbag enabled indicator
- 2. The front passenger airbag disabled indicator

When the vehicle is in the **READY** state, shift the gear to D, N or R position. After the passenger frontal airbag is turned on/off, the corresponding indicator will be illuminated.

Children in car

Child passenger safety guide

In order to fully ensure the safety of children riding with you, Lotus recommends installing child safety seats on the rear seats for children to sit on, rather than holding children in your arms.

To ensure child and other occupants safety, Lotus recommends that you should use a suitably sized child safety seat that complies with applicable regulations and standards.

⚠ Warning!

- Children should not be seated in the front passenger seat.
- Never use seat belt extenders on a seat belt that is used to install a child safety seat or booster seat.
- When not in use, keep the child restraint system secured or remove it from the passenger compartment to help prevent it from injuring passengers in the event of a sudden stop or collision.
- Adults in the vehicle should be responsible for the safety of the children passengers.

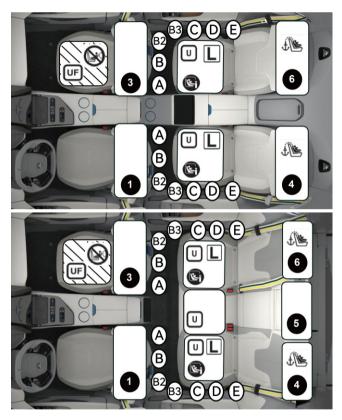
- Do not allow children to stand or kneel in the seat, or be placed in the boot. Failure to do so may lead to personal injury in the event of a collision or sudden braking.
- Do not leave children alone in vehicles without supervision.
- Do not allow children to use the key, otherwise children may cause personal injury or vehicle damage due to misuse.
- When traveling, be sure to open the child safety lock(p.48) to prevent children from accidentally opening the car door or window.
- Do not allow more than one child to share the child safety seat at the same time.
- Make sure there are no hard or sharp objects on the child safety seat to prevent personal injury in the event of an accident.

Child safety seat

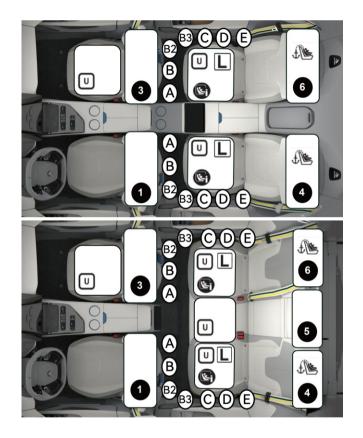
Please use a child safety seat that complies with applicable regulations or standards.

When the passenger frontal airbag is activated, do not install a child safety seat on the front passenger seat.

Passenger frontal airbag on



Passenger frontal airbag off





Apply to the approved "universal" child safety seat.



Apply to the approved forward-facing "universal" child safety seat.



Apply to specific child safety seat listed in the attached table. These restrictions may belong to the categories of "specific vehicles", "restricted", or "semi universal".



Apply to I-Size and ISOFIX child safety seat.



Seat position and top tether anchorages.



Apply to forward-facing child safety seat.



Do not install the rear-facing child safety seat.



ISO/F3: forward-facing, higher child safety seat.



ISO/B2: rear-facing child safety seat with full size.



ISO/B3: forward-facing child safety seat with full size.



ISO/R3: rear-facing child safety seat with reduced size.



ISO/R2: rear-facing child safety seat with reduced size.



ISO/R1: rear-facing child safety seat (infant).

⚠ Warning!

- It is important to properly secure the child safety seat to avoid personal injury or death in the event of a collision or sudden braking.
- Do not install a rear-facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat to avoid personal injury or death when the passenger frontal airbag is deployed.
- When installing a forward-facing child safety seat on front passenger seat, adjust the front passenger seat to an appropriate height as far as possible.
- When installing a child safety seat, adjust the backrest angle of the seat reasonably to ensure stability of the child safety seat.
- When installing a child safety seat, adjust the height of the headrest reasonably to avoid interference with the child safety seat.
- If a child safety seat is installed on the rear seat, the driver and front passenger shall keep an appropriate distance between their seat and the child safety seat when adjusting the seat backward or backrest angle.

- Never use one tether or one lower anchorage to fit more than one child safety seat. Multiple seats can stress the tethers or anchorages and may cause damage to the tethers or anchorages, resulting in serious personal injury or death.
- Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.
- When a child is sitting in a safety seat, the tethers on the safety seat shall be checked to ensure that they are intact and not damaged.
- Be sure to choose a safety seat that is suitable to ensure that the child's neck and head are effectively supported.
- It is not allowed to let infants and young children sit on adult thighs when riding, and they should ride in suitable child safety seats.

- Top tethers apply to forward-facing child safety seat. The rear seat angle can be adjusted if necessary to facilitate the installation of the top tether.
- Lotus recommends that smaller children should be seated in a rear-facing child safety seat as much as possible.

 A suitable booster cushion or child seat should be used if the belt touches the child's neck. This advice also applies to any adult of small stature.

It is recommended to use child safety seat - fixed with car seat belt.						
Mass group	Manufacturer	Туре	Authorization number			
Group 0+ (less than 13kg)	Maxi Cosi	Pebble 360	030063			
Group I (9-18kg)	-	-	-			
Group II (15-25kg)	Graco	Booster Basic	E11 - 0444165			
Group III (22-36kg)	Graco	Booster Basic	E11 - 0444165			

It is recommended to use child safety seat - fixed with I-Size and ISOFIX.					
Mass group	Manufacturer	Туре	Authorization number		

It is recommended to use child safety seat - fixed with I-Size and ISOFIX.						
Group 0+ (less than 13kg)	Maxi Cosi	Pebble 360 + FamilyFix 360 base	030063			
Group I (9-18kg)	Britax Römer	Trifix2 I-size	129R - 010015			
Group II (15-25kg)	Britax Römer	Kidfix I-Size	E1 129R03 / 04 0061 01			
Group III (22-36kg)	Britax Römer	Kidfix I-Size	E1 129R03 / 04 0061 01			

	Seat position/seat number							
Categorie s of child safety seat	Driver seat	Front passenger seat ⁴⁾		Rear seat				
		3		Left seat	Middle seat	Right seat		
	1	Airba g activa ted ²⁾	The airba g is turn ed off	4 ⁵⁾	5 ^{3) 5)}	6 ⁵⁾		
Child safety seat with universal lap belt ¹⁾ (Yes/No)	N	N	Y	Y	Y	Y		
Portable hammock (horizonta I forward- facing ISOFIX child safety seat) (L1/L2)	N	N	N	N	N	N		

	Seat position/seat number						
	Driver seat	Front passenger seat ⁴⁾		Rear seat			
Categorie s of child safety		3		Left seat	Middle seat	Right seat	
seat	1	Airba g activa ted ²⁾	The airba g is turn ed off	4 ⁵⁾	5 ^{3) 5)}	6 ⁵⁾	
Maximum rear- facing child safety seat (R1/R2X/ R2/R3)	N	N	N	C (R3)	N	C (R3)	
Maximum forward- facing child safety seat (F2X/F2/ F3)	N	N	N	A (F3)	N	A (F3)	

	Seat position/seat number							
	Driver seat	Front passenger seat ⁴⁾		Rear seat				
Categorie s of child safety		3		Left seat	Middle seat	Right seat		
seat	1	Airba g activa ted ²⁾	The airba g is turn ed off	4 ⁵⁾	5 ^{3) 5)}	6 ⁵⁾		
Maximum child safety seat with booster	N	N	B2/ B3	B2/B3	N	B2/B3		
I-Size child safety seat (Yes/No)	N	N		Y	N	Y		
Seat position equipped with top tether (yes/no)	N	N		Y	N	Y		

Categorie s of child safety seat	Seat position/seat number							
	Driver seat	Front passenger seat ⁴⁾		Rear seat				
		3	}	Left seat	Middle seat	Right seat		
	1	Airba g activa ted ²⁾	The airba g is turn ed off	4 ⁵⁾	5 ^{3) 5)}	6 ⁵⁾		

Y: Apply to the installation of child safety seat of a specified category;

N: Not apply to the installation of child safety seat of a specified category.

Remarks:

When the passenger frontal airbag is activated, do not install a rear-facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat.

- 1) Child safety seat with universal lap belt is suitable for all groups;
- 2) Child safety seats for children only;
- ³⁾ No. 5 seat is only applicable to vehicles with 3 rear seats, and only applicable to child safety seat equipped with vehicle seat belts;

⁴⁾ To install a child safety seat on the front passenger seat, the following instructions shall be followed:

- When using the rear-facing child safety seat, adjust the front passenger seat backward so that the child safety seat does not interfere with the passenger screen, or adjust the front passenger seat fully backward.
- When using the rear-facing child safety seat, adjust the height of the front passenger seat to the highest position.
- When using ISO B2/B3 child safety seat, adjust the height of the front passenger seat to the lowest position.
- Adjust the front passenger seat backrest to ensure stable installation of the child safety seat. The backrest of the child safety seat must fit on the backrest of the vehicle seat as closely as possible.
- Adjust the headrest upward to prevent interference with the child safety seat.

5) To install a child safety seat on the rear seat, the following instructions shall be followed:

- A certain distance shall be kept between the front seat and the child safety seat.
- Adjust the backrest angle of the child safety seat to ensure stable installation of the child safety seat. The backrest of the child safety seat must fit on the backrest of the vehicle seat as closely as possible.
- Adjust or remove the rear seat headrest to prevent interference with the child safety seat.
- Please store the removed headrest in the boot for safe transportation. When the child safety seat is removed from the vehicle, the headrest must be restored.

Mass level	Size category	Child safety seat
	F	ISO/L1
Group 0 (0–10kg)	G	ISO/L2
	E	ISO/R1
	С	ISO/R3
Group 0+ (0-13kg)	D	ISO/R2
, ,	E	ISO/R1
	Α	ISO/F3
	В	ISO/F2
Group I (9-18kg)	B1	ISO/F2X
, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	С	ISO/R3
	D	ISO/R2
Group II (15–25kg)	B2/B3	ISO/B2/B3
Group III (22–36kg)	B2/B3	ISO/B2/B3

Installation of I-Size child safety seat for 5-seater model



Child seat identification

I-Size anchorages are located in the two rear outer seats, and there is an I-Size sign at the connection of the anchorages.



Installation position

The top tether anchorages of the child safety seat is located behind the rear seat backrest.

Observe the installation instructions for the child safety seat and use I-Size anchorages.

Installation of I-Size child safety seat for 4-seater model*



Child seat identification

I-Size anchorages are located in the two rear outer seats, and there is child safety seat sign on the cover of the anchorages.



Top tether fixing device

The top tether anchorage of the child safety seat is located behind the rear seat headrest

Observe the installation instructions for the child safety seat and use I-Size anchorages.

⚠ Warning!

- It is important to properly secure the child safety seat to avoid personal injury or death in the event of a collision or sudden braking.
- After installing a child safety seat in the vehicle, do not adjust the vehicle seat, as this can loosen the safety seat attachments.
 Remove the safety seat before adjusting the vehicle seat

- position. When the vehicle seat has been adjusted, reinstall the safety seat.
- If the vehicle head restraint prevents proper installation of a child restraint system, the head restraint of the respective seating position shall be readjusted or entirely removed.
- Never route a top tether strap over the top of the head restraint.
 The strap should be routed beneath the head restraint.
- Always check and adjust every child's safety harness or seat belt for every trip.
- If a child safety seat is installed on the rear seat, the driver and front passenger shall keep an 50 mm between their seat and the child safety seat when adjusting the seat backward or backrest angle.
- Never use one tether or one anchorage to fit more than one child safety seat. Multiple seats can stress the tethers or anchorages and may cause damage to the tethers or anchorages, resulting in serious personal injury or death.
- The anchorages of child safety seat can only withstand the loads created by a properly installed child safety seat. Under no circumstances should the above anchorage be used as an adult seat belt or seat harness. Otherwise, injury may be caused in a vehicle collision.
- When a child is sitting in a safety seat, the tethers on the safety seat shall be checked to ensure that they are intact and not damaged.

- It is not allowed to let infants and young children sit on adult thighs when riding, and they should ride in suitable child safety seats.
- It should not be possible to move the child restraint more than 25 mm in any direction along the seat belt path.

- Top tethers of child safety seat apply to forward-facing child safety seat. The rear seat backrest angle can be adjusted if necessary to facilitate the installation of the top tether for child safety seat.
- Lotus suggests keeping smaller children in rear-facing child safety seats as much as possible.
- A suitable booster cushion or child seat should be used if the belt touches the child's neck. This advice also applies to any adult of small stature.
- Use caution when installing child seats to ensure that sharp edges or protruding parts on the child seat do not damage the vehicle's interior.
- Long-term installation and use of child seats could damage the vehicle's interior. Lotus recommends using the kick guard accessory to help protect the vehicle's interior.

Child safety lock

The rear doors of the vehicle are equipped with child safety locks, which, if enabled, can prevent children from opening the doors or windows using the switches on rear doors, thus reducing the risk of accidents.



- 1. Driver door rear left child safety lock switch
- 2. Driver door rear right child safety lock switch

When the child safety lock switch is pressed, the corresponding child safety lock will be enabled, and the corresponding door and window button in the rear row will be disabled. When the child safety lock switch is pressed again, the corresponding child safety lock will be disabled and the relevant functions will be enabled.

In the event of a collision, the child safety lock will automatically unlocked.

Life detection and care

The vehicle is equipped with a life detection and care system, which monitors whether there are children or pets left inside after you lock and leave the vehicle with a valid key. If this happens, the system will send a series of warnings to remind you.



The life detection and care system is enabled by default, and you can choose to enable or disable this function by tapping the loon on the CSD and selecting **Safety**. After this function is disabled,

there will be information prompts displayed on the instrument cluster and the CSD.

With this function on, if the system detects that there are children or pets left in the car for too long, it will issue a warning and push a message to your mobile APP to remind you to deal with the situation in time. The warnings issued by the system are divided into different levels. The higher the level, the higher the danger in the car.

- Level 1 warning: the vehicle will turn on the hazard warning lamps and horn alarm, and send an alert message to your mobile APP.
- Level 2 warning: if you have ignored the alert message, the vehicle will continuously trigger the hazard warning lamps and horn alarm at the frequency of once every minute.
- Level 3 warning: if you continue to ignore a level 2 alert message, then after a period of time, The vehicle will continuously trigger the hazard warning lamps and horn alarm at the frequency of once every minute for 30 min and activate the E-call; if the system detects that the temperature is too high, the system will automatically open the windows to cool down the cabin and activate the E-call; At the time, you will receive further alert messages on your mobile APP.

The vehicle is equipped with a life detection and care system, which monitors whether there are children or pets left inside after you lock and leave the vehicle with a valid key. If this happens, the system will send a series of warnings to remind you.

① Note!

The life detection and care system function may not work properly when:

- The unattended children or pets are covered by coverings, which is beyond the recognition capability of the system.
- Unattended children or pets are in a blind spot for life detection and care system.
- The movement of items in the vehicle, such as clothes hanging on coat hooks etc, may interfere with the system's judgement and create false alerts.
- Additional accessories added to the radar installation area in the car or damage to the ceiling.
- A system fault has occurred (e.g., camera, radar, braking, steering, etc.).

Lotus security system V

The functions of the Lotus security system V can prevent others from illegally entering and starting your vehicle.

⚠ Warning!

Do not leave the card key or key fob in the vehicle.

Caution!

- The vehicle is provided with the Lotus security system V, but it cannot prevent all thefts and guarantee the absolute safety of the vehicle. You should always be mindful of the safety of your personal property and do not leave valuables in the car.
- Do not attempt to modify the Lotus security system V as this may cause system failure.

Vehicle locking & anti-theft

If you lock the vehicle from the outside, the Lotus security system V will enter set status after a period time. If it is detected that any of the doors, bonnet, or boot lid is opened with an invalid key, the left and right direction indicator lamps will flash and the BBS will sound to issue a warning.

If the vehicle is unlocked from the outside with a valid key, the vehicle anti-theft system will be deactivated.

① Note!

- When the Lotus security system V is turned on and the system detects that the vehicle is in the operation of being lifted, the system will alarm.
- When the vehicle is in a fortified state, cut off the power supply (battery) of the burglar alarm, and the system will alarm.
- If the Lotus security system V malfunctions, please contact the Lotus retailer to inspection.

① Note!

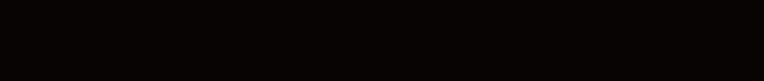
- If there is electromagnetic interference around the vehicle, such as power plant, signal tower, the Lotus security system V may not work normally.
- If you lose your vehicle, you can lock it and track it remotely via the Lotus Customer Care Centre.

Electronic steering lock

The electronic steering lock is an anti-theft protection device. After it is turned on, the steering wheel of the vehicle will be locked, so as to prevent the vehicle being driven by any unauthorized personnel and ensure the safety of the vehicle.

When the vehicle is locked from the outside or the vehicle is not switched to the READY state after a period of unlocking, the electronic steering lock will be enabled automatically; After unlocking the vehicle or switching the vehicle to the READY state, the steering electronic lock will be released automatically.





DEVICEI

Charging

Charging cable

The charging cable is located under the front hood.



- 1. Vehicle plug
- 2. Charger plug
- 3. Charging cable

⚠ Warning!

• Do not use the charging cable with extension cords or adapters.

- If the plug emits smoke or melts, do not touch the charging cable or vehicle plug. Stop the charging process and press the emergency stop button on the charger.
- Make sure to keep the charging cable away from children.
- When the plug is not in use, ensure that it is covered with a dust cover or placed in a suitable position.
- Do not clean the charging cable when connected to the vehicle.
- Do not use a jet washer or steam or cleaners with corrosive agents on the charging cable or connectors.
- Do not soak charging cables in liquid.

Charging preparation

When the low battery warning indicator $\stackrel{\square}{\longrightarrow}$ on the instrument cluster is illuminated accompanied with text prompts, you must charge the vehicle as soon as possible. The charging port is located at the left rear side of the vehicle.

The charging port cover can be opened or closed in the following ways:

 Unlock the vehicle with a valid key, press the outside of the charging port cover, and the cover will open automatically.
 Press the cover closing button or lock the vehicle, and the cover will be closed automatically.

When the charging port cover opens and closes slowly, it indicates that the charging port cover has a position fault and is in a self-learning state. After the self-learning is completed, the operation of the charging port cover returns to normal.



Opening charging port cover



Cover closing button

■ Tap the icon on the central stack display and select the integrated cover switch to open or close the cover automatically.



⚠ Warning!

- Unlock the vehicle before inserting/pulling out the charging plug. Always insert/pull out the charging plug upright without any skewing, shaking and aggressive operation.
- If you smell a strong odour or burning smell from the charging, stop charging immediately.
- Never allow children to contact or use the charging device.
- Ice and snow in the charging port cover area may affect the opening of the charging port cover, so be sure to manually clear the ice to open the charging port cover.
- When the charging port cover area is icy or obstructed, do not force the charging port cover to open, otherwise the charging port cover may be damaged.

- Before charging, ensure that the charging port connectors, charging plug and socket are not contaminated with water or foreign objects to avoid damage to the vehicle.
- If the charging port or the metal jack of the charging plug is corroded, deformed, cracked, etc., it is forbidden to charge the vehicle or use the charging device.
- If you have implanted electronic medical equipment such as a cardiac pacemaker or cardiovascular defibrillator, please do not enter or stay in the vehicle while the vehicle is charging, otherwise the function of the electronic medical equipment may be affected, resulting in personal injury or death.
- Never remove or modify the charging port or charging device.
- After charging, close the charging port cover immediately to prevent the ingress of rain, snow or other impurities.
- Do not charge when the connection between the charging plug and the socket is not secure.
- In the event of thunderstorms, it is recommended to stop charging the vehicle, because lightning may cause damage to the charging device.

Caution!

When the ambient temperature is below -20°C, do not use AC charging equipment with a power of 3.3kW or less (including self-

purchased on-board charging equipment) to charge the vehicle, to avoid causing power loss.

① Note!

- When the charging port cover opens and closes slowly, it indicates that the charging port cover has a position fault and is in a self-learning state.
- The vehicle can only be charged when parked, and cannot be charged whilst running or software upgrade.
- Shifting is not possible while the vehicle is being charged.

Charging settings



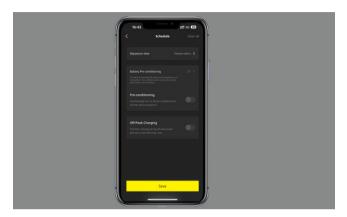
Tap the \square icon on the central stack display and select the charging APP to access the charging setting interface.

- Charging limit: drag the scale mark to the charging limit slider to set the charging power.
- Max current for AC charging: the charging current is classified into 5A, 8A, 16A, MAX.
- Pause/resume charging: tap the STOP button to stop charging.
 Tap the RESTART button to resume charging.

① Note!

- The minimum charging limit can be set to 50% and the maximum can be set to 100%. the charging current is available in 4 levels.
- The temperature of the high voltage battery is too low or the air conditioner is used during charging, the charging time will be extended. The charging speed will be limited at high SOC ranges of the high voltage battery.
- The charger cutting out whilst charging may be caused by fluctuations in the power grid. The charging current can be appropriately reduced by referring to the charging current displayed on the central screen display to ensure normal charging. If cutting out continues, please contact the Lotus retailer.
- The above content is only applicable to AC charging.

Appointment for a trip



Based on your travel plan, you can tap **Vehicle control** - **More** - **Appointment** to enter the appointment setting interface where settings including scheduled charging, turn on A/C pre-start and traction battery preheating are available.

When scheduled charging is turned on, the vehicle begins to calculate the start time for charging comprehensively according to the current time, travel time, state of charge, and peak and valley hours, and will automatically start charging. If the charging gun has been inserted at this time, it will start a short pre-charge, calculate the charging start time, and then stop charging and prompt the charging start time through the Lotus APP.

① Note!

- Scheduled charging is only applicable to Lotus household AC charging stations.
- Do not pause/turn off the charging function through Lotus APP or CSD, otherwise the booking travel charging function cannot be used.
- When the power battery is less than 30%, the pre-charge will charge the power battery to 31% before calculating the charging start time
- When the charging time is not enough to charge the power battery to the target level, the charging will begin immediately.

When A/C pre-start is turned on, the A/C will be automatically turned on about 15 minutes before the estimated travel time.

① Note!

After the driver unlocks the vehicle, the air conditioning automatically turns off.

By activating the traction battery preheating function, the traction battery temperature can be automatically recognized about one hour before the travel time, and adjusted to the appropriate range based on the traction battery preheating level.

Battery preheating at low temperature

The low-temperature traction battery preheating function is to heat the traction battery to a specified temperature through a charging device when it is below a certain temperature, so that the temperature of the battery can meet the needs of rapid charging.

After heating to the specified temperature, the charging mode will be entered automatically. The voltage and current of the traction battery during preheating can be checked via the mobile APP or the central stack display.

① Note!

- If the preheating function of the high voltage battery fails or is abnormal, please contact your Lotus retailer immediately.
- To use the vehicle at a low-temperature environment, operate the vehicle as soon as possible after the preheating of the traction battery. Long-term parking will reduce the heating effect.

Charging guidance

During charging, the charging status of the vehicle can be viewed from:

- Instrument panel
- Central screen display (CSD)
- Mobile APP

Charging port indicator



Charging port indicator

White (constantly illuminated): indicates that the indicator lamp is illuminated automatically when the charging port cover is opened.

Green (flashing): the charging is normal within a period of time after the charging plug is connected.

Green: the charging is complete and lasts for 2 minutes.

Orange (constantly illuminated): indicates the battery preheating function is on. When the power battery temperature is too low, it will be heated first after the charging gun is inserted and automatically switch to charging mode after heating is completed, the indicator light switching to green flashing.

Red: failure occurred for 2 minutes during charging.

① Note!

When charging, the instrument cluster and tail lamp will demonstrate light flow effect. In case of a fault, the charging will stop, and the instrument cluster will turn red with a fault displayed.

Charging with charging station

- Press the charging port cover on the rear left side of the vehicle, and the cover will open automatically.
- 2. Remove the charging plug from the charging station, and insert it into the charging port, the electronic lock will be enabled automatically.
- Operate according to instructions on the charging station to start charging the vehicle. The vehicle cannot be charged if the electronic lock is not locked. In this case, you can try to pull out the charging plug to check whether the electronic lock is locked.
- 4. During charging, you can swipe the card to stop charging or select stop charging on the central stack display or mobile APP, after charging is stopped, you can choose resume charging; After charging, you can unlock the electronic lock by using a valid key or central unlock switch and then remove the charging plug from the vehicle.

5. Press the charging port cover closing button to automatically close the charging port cover and return the charging plug to the charging station.

$oldsymbol{\Lambda}$ Warning!

- When charging with a charging station, be sure to abide by relevant regulations of the charging station.
- Before charging, confirm that the charging station complies with applicable national standards.
- When encountering an emergency during charging, press the emergency stop button on the charging device to stop charging.
- Considering the differences in understanding of the national charging standards by charging station manufacturers of various brands, there is possibility that certain charging station is not suitable for charging your vehicle.

Electronic lock emergency release cable



The emergency rope of the electronic lock is placed at the upper hinge of the driver's door.

⚠ Warning!

When using the emergency rope of the electronic lock, please fully open the door and keep it still to avoid pinching your fingers.

① Note!

When the vehicle loses power or the electronic lock fails, causing the charging gun to be unable to be removed, the emergency pull rope can be pulled to unlock it.

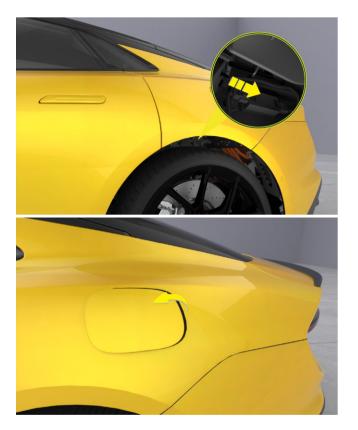
Charging port cover emergency open

When the charging port cover cannot be opened normally, the following operations can be used to open the charging port cover in an emergency:

 Remove the rear wheelarch liner located underneath the charging port cover.



2. Push the charging port cover lock lever backwards to unlock the charging port cover, pull it out from the gap and open the charging port cover.



Key introduction

Card key



Exterior card key sensing area

Unlock: in the vehicle locked state, unlock the vehicle by holding the card key close to the exterior key sensing area.

Lock: when the vehicle is unlocked with all doors (including the bonnet, tailgate) closed, hold the card key close to the exterior key sensing area to lock the car.

□ Caution!

The card key may be damaged if bent or exposed to strong magnetic fields.

① Note!

- When using the card key to unlock/lock the vehicle, it is necessary to stay stationary and close to the exterior card key induction area.
- If the card key induction area is contaminated by ice, frost and dirt, this may affect the card key sensing, and it may not be possible to unlock/lock the vehicle.
- The function of the card key may be affected in low or high temperatures. If the vehicle is not unlocked successfully, please try again by moving the card key away from the vehicle completely and then place the card key up close to the induction area. If the vehicle still cannot be unlocked, please contact your Lotus Customer Care Centre.
- If any one of the card keys is lost or to order additional card key, please contact your Lotus Customer Care Centre.
- A maximum of 6 card keys per vehicle are available.

Key fob



- 1. Single button
- 2. LED indicator
- 3. Bluetooth antenna

Carry the key fob within certain distance from the car, to achieve the following functions:

- When the vehicle is unlocked and the all doors are closed, press a single button to lock the vehicle.
- When the vehicle is locked, press and release the single button to unlock the vehicle.

- If the key fob is insensitive, try it again by directing not at the Bluetooth antenna with the key fob held in your hand.
- After the vehicle is locked or unlocked by pressing and releasing the single button once, the locked or unlocked status of vehicle will not change within a period of time, which means another press and release will not work.
- After the 2-step unlock (p.70) function is activated, press and release the single button once to unlock the driver door, and then press the single button again to unlock the vehicle.
- When the vehicle is unlocked and the all doors are closed, press and release and then hold the single button immediately to lock the vehicle while closing the windows completely.

① Note!

When the **Auto close windows on lock** (p.82) setting is opened, press a single button to lock the vehicle and windows will automatically close completely.

- When the vehicle is locked, press and release and then hold the single button immediately to unlock the vehicle while opening the windows completely.
- When the vehicle is locked, press and hold the single button to activate the car search function.

□ Caution!

Do not modify or tap the key fob, otherwise it may affect the key function.

① Note!

- The distance at which the key fob can be detected by the car may be reduced due to being close to buildings, structures or other environmental conditions.
- The key fob is provided with a power saving mode. When the vehicle detects that the key fob is nearby, the proximity unlocking function will be disabled temporarily. It is necessary to press the single button to lock/unlock the vehicle.
- The key fob enters the power saving mode after being out of the sensing range of the vehicle or after a period of inactivity.

Replacement of key fob battery

Please replace the key fob battery in time when the following situations occur:

- Press the single button, the key fob indicator is on for a period of time.
- When the vehicle is in READY mode, instrument cluster panel displays a low key battery prompt.

When replacing the key fob battery, be sure to follow the steps below:

 Insert a thimble-like tool (not equipped with the vehicle) into the key fob battery removal hole and push to unlock the battery lock.



2. Remove the cover on the back of the key.



3. Use the thimble-like tool (not included in the vehicle) to insert the gap to lift the battery. The recommended new battery type is: CR2032.



4. When installing the cover plate on the back of the key, press hard against the clip to tighten it.

⚠ Warning!

- The battery of the key fob is relatively small, so please keep the battery out of the reach of children to prevent children from accidentally swallowing it, resulting in serious injury or death.
- Be sure to dispose of used batteries in accordance with local regulations. Improper disposal of used batteries can damage the environment and endanger human health.

Caution!

When replacing the battery, static electricity may damage the key fob. Please take the following preventive measures:

- Please wash and dry your hands before replacing the battery.
- Avoid replacing the battery in the car.

① Note!

- When replacing the battery, you must keep the environment dry and clean. Moisture and grease can cause degradation of the battery and affect its service life.
- Please pay attention to the positive and negative poles of the battery to be installed.

 When installing the cover on the back of the key, be careful not to damage or deform it.

Digital key

The mobile phone digital key contains some functions of the card key and the key fob.

Only one owner user digital key can be paired to each vehicle, and the owner user can share the digital key via mobile wallet APP.

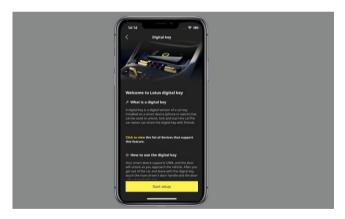
① Note!

- If the phone runs out of battery and automatically shuts down, it can still be used for a period of time (subject to the actual condition of the mobile phone).
- After you have turned off your phone, the digital key cannot be used until you turn it back on.
- For the time being, digital keys are only supported on mobile phones using the iOS operating system.
- Some models of mobile phones are unable to create UWB digital keys.

Creating a NFC digital key with Lotus APP

Creating a NFC digital key on a mobile phone needs to be done in the car. Open Lotus APP and create a digital key on your phone in the following steps:

- 1. In the Lotus APP, select More and click Lotus digital key.
- 2. Keep the key fob in the car or the card key within the wireless charging induction area, and then remove the card key.
- Place the mobile phone in the wireless charging induction area and wait for a prompt on the mobile phone and the CSD for successful creation.
- **4.** Follow the prompts on the mobile phone to save the digital key to the mobile wallet APP.



① Note!

According to the mobile phone security policy, when using the NFC digital key to unlock and start, it may be necessary to double-click the side button of the phone and select the car key card in the phone wallet for identity authentication.

Creating an UWB digital key with Lotus APP

Creating an UWB digital key on a mobile phone needs to be done in the car.

Open Lotus APP and create a digital key on your phone in the following steps:

- 1. In the Lotus APP, select More and click Lotus digital key.
- 2. Keep the key fob in the car or the card key within the wireless charging induction area.
- After the prompt for successful creation is shown on the mobile phone and the CSD, save the digital key to the mobile wallet APP.

① Note!

If the UWB digital key does not work properly, it may be related to the status of your mobile phone, you can try the following operations:

- 1. Check if Face ID pops up on your phone.
- Disable Comfort entry and enable it again in the mobile wallet APP.
- 3. Disable **Bluetooth** and enable it again in the phone **settings**.
- 4. Mobile operating system updated to the latest version.
- 5. Disconnect other Bluetooth devices.
- Mobile phone needs to open phone settings Privacy and Security - Location services - system service - Network and Wireless.

Create a digital key with mail link

You can use an email URL to create a digital key by following these steps:

- Place the key fob in the car or the card key within the wireless charging induction area, and then remove the card key.
- 2. With the phone you intend to pair the digital key, click on the link for digital key creation in the pairing email.
- 3. Follow the prompts to complete the pairing, and then check the digital key in the mobile wallet APP.

① Note!

To create a digital key, park your vehicle in a safe place with good network before operating.

Create a digital key using a QR code (iOS device)

You can use a QR code to create a digital key by following these steps:

- Place the key fob in the car or the card key within the wireless charging induction area, and then remove the card key.
- Click the icon in the CSD, select Vehicle, click to enter the digital key management interface, and click to view How To Create and scan the QR code with iPhone camera.
- 3. Follow the prompts to complete the pairing, and then check the digital key in the mobile wallet APP.

① Note!

To create a digital key, park your vehicle in a safe place with good network before operating.

Sharing digital keys with mobile phone

After the main user successfully creates a digital key, they can select the sharing function in the mobile wallet application to share the digital key with others. The digital key only supports sharing between iPhones.

① Note!

 The total number of card keys, key fob, and digital keys shall not exceed 12.

- Using the digital key requires NFC, Bluetooth and positioning functions to be enabled on the mobile phone.
- Unlocking via the shared mobile digital key for the first time may require a longer waiting time. Please pay attention to the prompts on the mobile phone.
- Through Apple Wallet, you can share with up to 4 friends who hold iCloud accounts, and each shared friend can install a digital key on an iPhone and the Apple Watch associated with that iPhone.

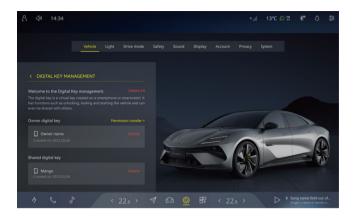
Deleting digital key

You can delete a digital key in the following ways:

Delete a digital key on the mobile phone:

- The owner user can delete his/her own digital key and the shared digital keys through the mobile wallet APP.
- The owner user can delete all the digital keys through Lotus APP.
- The owner user who use a mobile phone with iOS operating system can delete all the digital keys through iCloud.
- If your digital key is shared by others, you can also delete it from your mobile wallet APP.

Delete a digital key on the CSD:



Tap the icon in the CSD, select **Vehicle**, and click to enter the digital key management interface. Click Delete Digital Keys to delete all the digital keys with one click, or delete the owner user digital key or a shared digital key individually.

① Note!

- Before selling your vehicle, it is recommended that you remove the digital key from your Lotus APP or car.
- If you are a certified used car owner, the original owner's digital key will automatically become invalid and you need to re-bind the digital key.

Digital key permission transfer

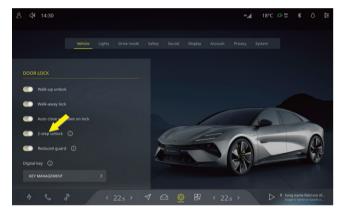
If the main user changes to a new phone and the digital key has not been deleted from the original phone, the new phone can be used to log in to the Lotus APP, click on **More**, and then click on **Lotus digital Key**. The Lotus APP will initiate the deletion of the original digital key and activate the digital key on the new phone.

① Note!

- When transferring digital key permissions, please park vehicle in a safe place with good / secure wireless location before proceeding.
- When transferring digital key permissions, please hold your phone inside the car for operation.

Doors

2-step unlock

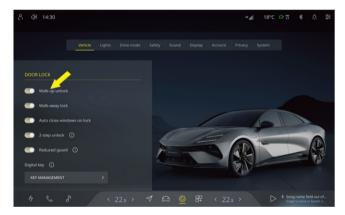


Tap the \mathfrak{G} icon in the central stack display, select **Vehicle**, and tap to activate the **2-step unlock** function.

With this function activated, press and release the single button of the key fob once to unlock the driver door, and press and release the single button again to unlock all doors.

- After the 2-step unlock function is activated, you can unlock the driver door to enter the vehicle and press the central unlock switch on the tunnel console to unlock the vehicle.
- Unlocking the vehicle with key fob is described in the Key fob (p.62).

Walk-up unlock



Tap the @ icon in the CSD, select **Vehicle** , and tap to activate the **Walk-up unlock** feature.



When the walk-up unlock feature is turned off, carrying the key fob and touching the driver's door handle switch can lock or unlock the vehicle.

When the walk-up unlock feature is turned on, carrying the key fob within a certain range of the vehicle will automatically unlock the vehicle.

⚠ Warning!

- When leaving the vehicle, be sure to carry a valid key with you. Leaving a valid key in the car will prevent the vehicle from automatically locking, and all doors, windows, and controls will be in an operable state, which may result in theft and accidents.
- Do not leave children alone in the vehicle unattended.

Please make sure the vehicle is fully locked before leaving.

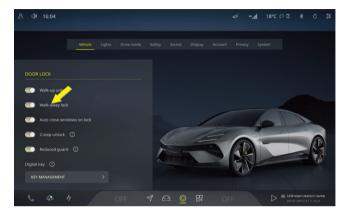
Caution!

If the door is frozen or blocked, do not vigorously pull or tap the door handle, as this may damage it.

① Note!

- When locking the vehicle with other valid keys, the key left inside the vehicle will be disabled until the vehicle is unlocked.
- After locking the vehicle, it can be verified if the vehicle is fully locked if all handles are retracted.
- The vehicle cannot be locked when one or more doors aren't fully closed.
- You need to actively turn off the walk-up on unlock function to avoid accidentally unlocking the vehicle when carrying the key fob near the vehicle

Walk-away lock



You can click on the @ icon in the central display screen, select **Vehicle**, and click to activate the **Walk-away lock** function.

When the walk-away lock function is turned on and all doors are closed, carry the key fob away from the vehicle within a certain range, and the vehicle will automatically lock.

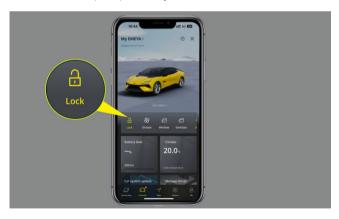
⚠ Warning!

- When using the walk-away lock function, please place the car key separately and carry it with you to avoid signal interference that may cause the lock to be unsuccessful.
- Do not leave the elderly, children or pets alone in the car to avoid accidents.

- When leaving the vehicle, be sure to carry a valid key with you. Leaving a valid key in the car will prevent the vehicle from automatically locking, and all doors, windows, and controls will be in a operable state, which may result in theft and accidents.
- Please make sure that the vehicle is fully locked before leaving.

Remote locking/unlocking via mobile APP

You can view the real-time status of the door locks by scrolling down and refreshing the vehicle control interface in the mobile APP. Tap the **Lock** n the mobile APP to realize remote locking/ unlocking. You can also understand the door lock status through the **Lock** switch colour and prompt message.



① Note!

- The status of door/window/central lock is automatically updated once in a while. You can also get it actively.
- When a previous lock request is being executed, the mobile APP cannot execute a new one
- If you do not open the door within a certain period after the remote unlock, the vehicle will be re-locked. You can check the vehicle locking/unlocking status on the mobile APP.

Activating super lock

When the super lock is activated, the doors cannot be opened from inside the vehicle.

When the vehicle is in personalization mode, the instrument cluster will display "inactive". When there is no one in the vehicle, the super lock can be activated in the following two ways:

- All vehicle doors (including the back door and hood) are closed, and the vehicle is locked for about a period of time, the super lock for front and rear doors will be activated.
- When any door is open, the vehicle will be locked. After all
 vehicle doors (including tailgate and bonnet) are closed for
 about a period of time, the super lock for front and rear doors
 will be activated.

Once the super lock is activated, the vehicle can be unlocked by using the valid key.

When the life detection and care detects that there are children or pets in the vehicle, the super lock will not be activated about a period of time after the vehicle is locked, and the primary warning will be sent for a short time to remind you to leave the vehicle with children or pets.

- If you do not unlock the vehicle to eliminate the warning, the warning will be sent again after a period of time.
- If you use a valid key to unlock the vehicle and lock it again, the vehicle's life protection function will still detect the presence of children or pets in the car, and the vehicle will automatically sound a higher level alarm (continuous alarm).
- If the vehicle still gives warning after confirming that there are no children or pets in the vehicle, please contact Lotus retailer in time.

Low guard mode

The activation of low guard mode will temporarily disable the antitheft functions such as super lock, inside mobilization detection and anti-roll detection alarm in any of the following conditions:

When the driver needs to leave the vehicle momentarily with a living being, such as a child or pet left in the vehicle, the vehicle shall be locked from the outside. When the vehicle needs to be repaired or towed, the vehicle shall be locked from the outside.



Tap the @ icon in the CSD, select **Vehicle** , and tap to activate the **Reduced guard** .

⚠ Warning!

Do not leave the vehicle for long periods of time when children or pets are left in the vehicle.

① Note!

After turning on the low-level protection function and locking the vehicle, please pay attention to the safety of the vehicle and the property in the vehicle. Each time the vehicle is powered on, the low-level protection function will automatically shut down.

Locking/unlocking doors from inside



Door switch

When the vehicle is in a locked (non-super lock) state, press the front door switch to unlock and open the corresponding front door. At the same time, the indicator on the central lock button will extinguish, and the instrument cluster shows that the door is open.

When the vehicle is in a locked state, press the rear door switch to unlock the corresponding rear door. Press the switch again to open the door.



Central lock on tunnel console

- 1. Central lock switch
- 2. Central unlock switch

The central lock switch is located at the front of the tunnel console and the vehicle can be locked/unlocked by pressing the central lock/unlock switch.

① Note!

- When the vehicle is driving and the door is locked, pressing the door switch cannot unlock the door.
- When the vehicle is being unlocked, the flush door handle will pop out.

In the event of vehicle collision, all doors will unlock.

Opening/closing doors from outside



Flush door handle

Unlock the vehicle with the keys, and the flush door handle will extend automatically. Pull the handle to open the door.

When the flush handle is frozen or obstructed, after the vehicle is unlocked, the ejecting failure can be assisted by manually clearing the ice by tapping the plate or handle with appropriate force.

⚠ Warning!

 Be sure to carry the valid key with you when leaving the vehicle. Leaving a valid key in the vehicle will leave all doors,

- windows and controls in a working condition, which may cause a dangerous, unauthorized or accidental use.
- Do not leave children alone in the vehicle unattended.

□ Caution!

If the door is frozen or blocked, do not vigorously pull or tap the door handle, as this may damage it.

① Note!

- When locking the vehicle with other valid keys, the key left inside the vehicle will be disabled until the vehicle is unlocked.
- After locking the vehicle, it can be verified if the vehicle is fully locked if all handles are retracted.
- The vehicle cannot be locked when one or more doors aren't fully closed.
- You need to actively turn off the walk-up on unlock function to avoid accidentally unlocking the vehicle when carrying the key fob near the vehicle.

Opening electric doors outside the vehicle*

If your vehicle is equipped with electric doors, the flush door handle on the door will automatically pop out. You only need to lightly pull the flush door handle once to automatically open the door.

① Note!

- Continuously pulling the door handle to open the door will trigger the manual door opening mode.
- After flushing the door handle once, if you cannot retract your hand in time, it may trigger the anti-pinch function and only manually open the door.

Opening/closing electric doors inside the vehicle*

If your vehicle is equipped with electric doors, you can open the doors from inside the vehicle as follows:

- Press the door switch on the front or rear doors, switch to the door control interface and the doors will automatically open to their maximum position.
- Tap on the door switch on the CSD to automatically open the corresponding front or rear doors to the maximum position.



Garage Interface



Electric door control interface

You can close the doors from inside the vehicle as follows:

- When you press the brake pedal, the driver's side door automatically closes.
- Tap on the door switch on the CSD to automatically close the corresponding front or rear doors.
- Tap on the rear door close switch on the rear seat display (RSD) to automatically close the corresponding rear door.



Rear display rear door close switch

 Tap on the passenger door close switch on the passenger screen display to automatically close the passenger door.



Passenger screen display passenger door close switch

Caution!

- Before closing the electric door inside the vehicle, please ensure that there are no people or objects on the path where the door is closed to avoid damaging the door or causing personal injury.
- If your vehicle is equipped with an electric door, please keep the door clean and dry. Do not stick accessories (such as carbon fiber material, metal material, thick film) on the door to ensure the normal operation of vehicle electronic devices.

① Note!

- When the electric door is open, you can gently push the door from the outside of the vehicle and the corresponding door closes automatically.
- When one side of the car door is opened, the corresponding closed door switch will appear. If all rear doors are closed, the door close switch will not be displayed on the rear display screen.

Closing by auto suction*

When you push the door gently, the door will be automatically engage to the fully locked position. During the suction and closing of the door, do not press the door switch or pull the flush door handle. Otherwise, the automatic suction will stop.



Closing by auto suction

⚠ Warning!

During the automatic suction for closing, make sure that the door will not pinch any part of your body or other items to prevent pinching injury or damage.

① Note!

If the suction lock fails, the door will not be automatically engage to the fully locked position, and the instrument cluster will display relevant fault information.

Auto re-lock

After the vehicle has been unlocked and no door has been opened for a period of time, the vehicle will be automatically re-locked.

Auto lock while driving

With all doors (including the bonnet, tailgate, charging port cover) closed and the vehicle speed over a certain speed limit, the indicator on the central lock button will be illuminated to indicate that the vehicle is locked.

Unlocking at collision

In the event of a collision, the vehicle automatically activates the central locking system and unlocks the four doors.

Emergency door unlocking from outside

In the case of battery depletion, emergency unlocking can be realized by using the tailgate opening switch or external power supply.



Emergency unlocking via tailgate opening switch

When using the tailgate opening switch for emergency unlocking, press and hold the switch for a period of time, and then use the valid keys to unlock normally.



Emergency unlocking via external power supply

When a suitable 12V external power supply is used for emergency unlocking, the doors can be unlocked using the following procedure:

- 1. Open the front bumper towing hook cover and pull out the external power wiring.
- 2. Connect the black wire fixed on the cover to the negative terminal of the external power supply, and the red wire to the positive terminal of the external power supply.
- 3. If the vehicle is unlocked using a valid key, the driver door will be unlocked automatically.
- 4. After the opening the door is completed, disconnect the external power supply, load the external wire that has been insulated back into the towing hook cover, and close the cover.

① Note!

In case that both methods are not applicable, please contact your Lotus retailer.

Emergency unlocking of doors from inside



Emergency handle

Pull the emergency handle in the door trim panel pocket open the door.

① Note!

- When the child safety locks are activated, the rear doors cannot be opened using the emergency release lever, they can only be opened from outside the vehicle.
- After the central locking system locks the vehicle, the four doors cannot be opened using emergency handles.

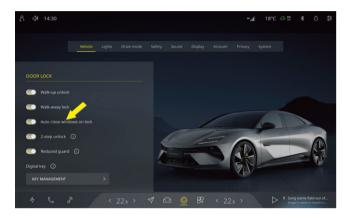
Windows

When any door is opened, the corresponding side window will automatically drop a certain distance. When the door is closed, the window will be closed automatically.

① Note!

- If the front door and the corresponding window are closed, the window can be fully opened via the one-button lowering function and the corresponding window will rise for a certain distance when the door is opened. After the door is closed, the window will open fully in an automatic way.
- If the window automatically rises to a fully closed state after the door is opened, closing the door directly at this time will result in damage to the vehicle. Please do not close the door and contact Lotus retailer.

Auto close windows on lock



You can tap the @icon on CSD and select **Vehicle** to turn on/off the auto close windows on lock.

① Note!

The windows will automatically close after the vehicle has been locked for more than 28 hours, and if the rain sensor detects rain, the windows will close immediately.

Window regulator switch



Window regulator switch on driver door trim panel

- 1. Left rear window regulator switch
- 2. Left front window regulator switch
- 3. Right front window regulator switch
- 4. Right rear window regulator switch

You can lift or lower all windows by operating the window regulator switch on driver door trim panel.

The window regulator switch has two gears, and you can control the windows as follows:

- Manual up/down: pull up or press down to the gear I, and the windows will rise or lower. Release the switch, and the windows will stop moving.
- Auto up/down: pull up or press down to the level II position, the windows will rise or lower automatically. Pull up or press down the switch again during the window movement, the windows will stop the movement.

⚠ Warning!

- When operating the window lift switch, do not accidentally touch the door switch to avoid accidental unlocking of the door and causing personal injury or property damage.
- Never leave children unattended in the vehicle, as they may inadvertently operate the window regulator switch and get injured due to a moving window.
- Before closing the windows, it is important to ensure that all passengers, especially children, are not sticking out any part of their body. Failure to do so may result in serious injury or death.
- For safety, it is recommended to lock the rear windows when a child is sitting in the rear seat. Refer to the Child safety lock (p.48).
- Pay attention to the to the window distance when opening and closing the door. Contact with the glass can lead to injuries.

 Do not operate the window regulator switch when the vehicle speed is too high.

① Note!

- The window regulator switch on rear door trim panel can be used to lift or lower the rear left and right windows.
- Please remove the snow and ice on the surface of the window in time to avoid the window being stuck or unable to open or close normally during the movement.

Window anti-pinch function

If the window encounters an obstacle during the automatic closing, it will stop closing and automatically return to the position before closing.

Window opening/closing via mobile APP



Tap the window switch on the mobile APP to fully open or close the windows. Before the full opening or closing of windows, the windows will not stop moving even if you tap the window switch on the mobile APP again.

⚠ Warning!

Do not activate the remote window opening and closing if the vehicle is not in your line of sight.

Window opening/closing via central lock



Central lock on tunnel console

- I. Central lock switch
- 2. Central unlock switch

The central lock switch can control the simultaneous rising and lowering of all windows.

When the central unlock switch $\widehat{\Box}$ is pressed and held, all windows will be fully opened simultaneously. Press the switch again during the window lowering, and the window will stop the movement.

When the central lock switch \bigcirc is pressed and held, all windows will be fully closed simultaneously. Press the switch again during the window rising, and the window will stop the movement.

Auto rising in rain



Rain light sensor module (RLSM)

All windows will automatically close completely when the RLSM at the front windscreen detects rain.

Self-learning of one-button rise and anti-pinch function

When the one-button rise and anti-pinch function fail due to power outage or window motor repair, you can try the following operations for self-learning:

- 1. Pull up the window regulator switch and hold it for 5s after the window raises to the top position.
- 2. Press the window regulator switch and hold it for 5s until the window is lowered to the bottom to complete the self-learning.

⚠ Warning!

- Before closing the windows, make sure that no one or object is in the way of window closing, otherwise, it may cause personal injury and car damage!
- In case that there is a child in the vehicle, the child safety lock shall be activated, and the rear window regulator switch shall be disabled to prevent the child from being injured due to misuse.

① Note!

When the one-button rise and anti-pinch function fail, the self-learning shall be completed as soon as possible to prevent pinching injury and window damage.

Bonnet

Opening of bonnet

To prevent damage to the bonnet or windscreen wipers, please make sure that the wiper arms are not lifted before opening the bonnet.

 The bonnet release lever handle with the symbol (show opening symbol on handle) is located under the instrument panel on the driver's side. To action the bonnet release the driver's door has to be open. To fully unlatch the bonnet, release lever handle must be pulled two times.



Bonnet opening handle

2. From outside of the vehicle, after partially raising the front edge the bonnet will then fully open.



Opening of bonnet

Bonnet closing

- 1. Lower the bonnet gently until the bonnet contacts.
- 2. Press down the bonnet position shown in the figure with both hands until it is locked. Lift the front edge of the bonnet slightly and check that it is completely closed.



Bonnet closing

⚠ Warning!

- To ensure driving safety, make sure that the bonnet is completely closed, otherwise the unintentional opening of the bonnet while the vehicle is driving will block the line of sight.
- If the gas struts that hold the bonnet open fail, you or others could be seriously injured. Periodically visually inspect the gas struts for signs of wear, cracks or other damage. Make sure that the bonnet is supported with sufficient force. If the gas struts no longer hold the bonnet open, do not operate, and contact the Lotus retailer.

Caution!

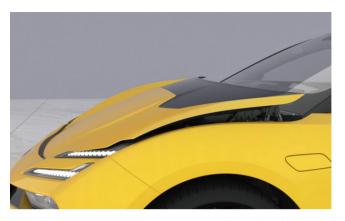
- Before closing the bonnet, please ensure that there are no obstacles in the area where the bonnet is about to close.
- Do not forcefully close the bonnet.
- Do not press the bonnet with one hand, as this may cause the bonnet to be dented or damaged.

① Note!

When the findicator on the driver instrument cluster is showing, please ensure that all doors, including the tailgate and bonnet, are fully closed.

Pedestrian protection control

Pedestrian protection control helps to mitigate the degree of head injury caused by impact with the vehicle in the event of a frontal collision.



When the pedestrian impact sensor detects that a frontal collision with the vehicle running at 28~50km/h will occur, the pedestrian protection control will be activated immediately and the rear part of the bonnet will pop up.

If the pedestrian protection control is faulty, the instrument cluster will display the relevant text and the MIL will be illuminated. In this case, please contact Lotus retailer immediately.

⚠ Warning!

- Make sure that the bonnet is properly closed, otherwise the pedestrian protection control may not function correctly.
- Do not continue to drive the vehicle after the pedestrian protection control has been activated, so as to avoid injury,

- death or unnecessary economic loss caused by the bonnet blocking the line of sight.
- Do not rely too much on pedestrian protection control. To ensure road traffic safety, you shall always be vigilant and need to make good observations and judgements of the surroundings.

Limitations of pedestrian protection control

Pedestrian protection control may not be activated due to factors such as ambient temperature, collision area, and angle of collision.

The pedestrian protection control may be activated accidentally in any of the following conditions:

- The vehicle chassis is severely bumped.
- The vehicle is passing through speed bumps or potholes at high speed.
- An object strikes the pedestrian protection area.

Tailgate

Opening/closing of tailgate

The tailgate can be opened or closed in several ways. In the process of closing, the tailgate will continue to beep until it is stopped:

Click the tailgate switch on CSD.

- Press and hold the tailgate switch on driver door.
- The vehicle is unlocked or with a key fob to press the tailgate open/close switch.
- With your key fob near the car. Use foot movement under the rear bumper to open the tailgate.

L Caution!

- If during opening, the tailgate movement is very slow, stalls, or even starts to close, it indicates that the system is reacting to either excessive weight on the tailgate or even a possible support strut failure. Please take care to remove any excess weight (e.g. snow fall). If the symptoms persist, then contact your service agent before using the power operated tailgate.
- Before opening the tailgate, ensure there is enough space above and behind the tailgate to avoid damage to the back door.
- Manual force application on the tailgate to open or close during the powered operation, may result in damage to the system. Allow the power operation to complete.
- Tape or hanging of any objects from the support power struts is.
 Do not push or pull on the support power struts. This may cause damage to the vehicle.
- Driving with the tailgate open and unsecured can cause damage to the components of the power operated tailgate.

① Note!

If the vehicle is locked, the direction indicator lamps will flash once, indicating that the tailgate is locked.

Some vehicle models support opening/closing the tailgate with kicking action. With a valid key, you can make kicking action in the tailgate induction area to open or close the tailgate.

Opening/closing of tailgate via CSD



Click the tailgate switch on CSD, and the tailgate will be opened or closed automatically.

Tailgate switch on driver door



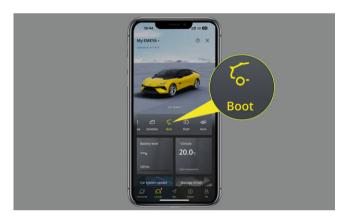
Tailgate switch on driver door

When the tailgate is closed, you can press and hold the tailgate switch on driver door to unlock and fully open the tailgate.

When the tailgate is open, you can press and hold the tailgate switch on driver door to close the tailgate automatically.

When the tailgate is in motion, pressing of the tailgate switch will stop the action, and holding the switch will make the tailgate move in the opposite direction.

Unlocking tailgate via mobile APP



When the vehicle is locked, you can tap the tailgate switch on the mobile APP to unlock the tailgate.

Tailgate opening/closing switch



Tailgate opening switch

When the vehicle is unlocked or a valid key is carried, press the tailgate opening switch, and the tailgate will be fully open.

① Note!

If you have set the tailgate opening height, the tailgate will automatically open to the set height.



Tailgate closing switch

Press the tailgate closing switch in the unlocked state of the vehicle, and the tailgate will automatically close.

Opening/closing of tailgate by kicking action*



Tailgate kick induction zone

Carry a key fob or UWB digital key to do a kick action in the tailgate induction area, and the tailgate will automatically open/ close.

① Note!

- If the vehicle is locked, the direction indicator lamps will flash once, indicating that the tailgate is locked.
- Keep the tailgate induction area clean. If the induction area is covered with snow, ice, dirt, etc., the kick open/closing function may not work properly.

 If the tailgate is failed to be opened/closed, please re-attempt or contact your Lotus retailer in time for the persistent opening problem.

Tailgate anti-pinch function

The anti-pinch function of the tailgate can effectively prevent accidental casualties or unnecessary economic losses arising from the closing of tailgate.

- If the tailgate is blocked by objects during the opening/closing, it will stop the action and issue a warning sound. If the tailgate is blocked during closing, it will move to the set height in opposite direction.
- If the vehicle moves during the opening/closing of the tailgate, the tailgate will stop the action and keep still.

Emergency opening of tailgate from the boot

In event of entrapment in the trunk, you can try to open the tailgate from the boot.

1. Flip outward from the top edge to open the protective cover.



Emergency unlocking of tailgate protective cover

2. Pull up the emergency unlocking lever of the tailgate to the limit position to unlock the tailgate, and push outward to open the tailgate.



Emergency unlocking of tailgate control lever

Setting tailgate opening height

You can set the tailgate opening height by following the steps below:

- 1. Manually open the tailgate to the desired height.
- Press and hold the tailgate closing switch until you hear an audible signal, which indicates that the current opening height of the tailgate has been set as the opening height.

⚠ Warning!

- When operating the tailgate, it is important to make sure there are no people in the track of the tailgate opening or closing, otherwise personal injury may occur.
- Before driving the vehicle, make sure that the tailgate is closed to avoid damage to the vehicle and injury to the driver and passengers.

! Caution!

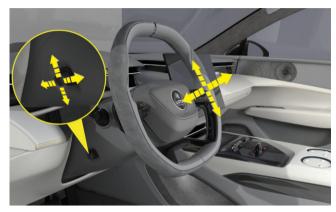
When manually opening or closing the tailgate, do not apply excessive force, otherwise the tailgate may be damaged or malfunction.

① Note!

You can also manually open the tailgate to the highest position, and press and hold the tailgate switch until you hear an audible signal to restore the tailgate opening height.

Steering wheel

Adjustment of steering wheel



Adjustment of steering wheel

When the vehicle is powered on, you can move the steering wheel up, down, back and forth by pulling the adjustment button on the left of the steering column.

⚠ Warning!

To ensure driving safety, do not adjust the steering wheel during driving.

Buttons on steering wheel



Paddles on steering wheels

- 1. Left multi-function button
- 2. Energy recovery paddle
- 3. Following distance button
- 4. Horn
- 5. Menu/voice button
- 6. Driving mode paddle
- 7. Right multi-function button

Steering wheel button operation



Press the left multi-function button: place your thumb in the middle of the multi-function button, and press the button until there is a crisp sound.



Toggle the left multi-function button up and down: place your thumb in the middle of the lower or upper part of the multi-function button, and toggle it up or down until a click is heard.

There are two methods to move the left multi-function button left and right:



Method 1

Place your thumb in the middle of the multi-function button, and toggle it left and right until a crisp sound is heard.



Method 2

Place your thumb on the raised position of the multi-function button, and toggle it down obliquely until a crisp sound is heard.



Toggle the following distance button up and down: place your thumb on the lower or upper part of the following distance button, and toggle the knob up or down until a crisp sound is heard.



Toggle the energy recovery paddle up: put your finger under the paddle, and toggle up the paddle until a crisp sound is heard.

① Note!

- The buttons on the right side of the steering wheel can be operated in the same way as those on the left side.
- Please put your fingers in an appropriate position to avoid inoperation or difficult operation of the buttons.

Steering wheel heating

Steering wheel heating



Tap the temperature value in the CSD to switch to the A/C control interface, then tap the \oplus icon to turn on the steering wheel heating function at level 3 by default. Repeat taps on the level to lower the level further until the heating function stops.

Automatic steering wheel heating



You can tap to turn on or off the automatic steering wheel heating function in the A/C setting interface of CSD.

With the automatic steering wheel heating function on, the steering wheel heating function will be activated automatically when the outside temperature is too low. The heating function will be turned off after it heats up to the target temperature and maintains for a period of time.

① Note!

• Steering wheel auto-start heating is off by default.

■ During the automatic heating, the steering wheel heating can be turned off by tapping the ⊕ icon once on the front A/C control interface.

Remote control of steering wheel heating



Switch to the A/C setting interface by tapping the **Climate** on the mobile APP interface.



Tap the icon to turn on the steering wheel heating. Tap the icon to turn off the steering wheel heating.

Combination instrument

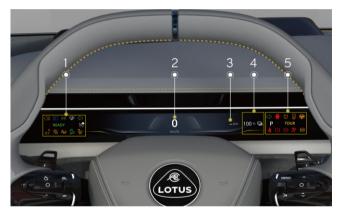
Instrument overview

This vehicle is equipped with an instrument cluster for driver and front passenger, which integrates functions including vehicle information display, status monitoring, warning indicators and driving modes.

① Note!

The image is provided for demonstration purposes only. Depending on vehicle features, software version, and market region, the information displayed may be slightly different, please refer to the actual vehicle.

Overview of driver side instrument cluster



Driver side instrument cluster

- 1. Left indicator display area: displays relevant information such as exterior light status and driver assist system.
- 2. Speed: displays the current speed of the vehicle.

- 3. Range: displays the mileage that the vehicle can travel with the high voltage battery at the current SOC.
- High voltage battery SOC: displays the SOC and the status of the high voltage battery.
- 5. Right indicator display area: displays information such as gear, driving mode and active safety.

① Note!

When the SOC is less than 20%, the high voltage battery low indicator will be illuminated in yellow.

Overview of passenger screen



Passenger side instrument cluster

- Screen OFF switch
- 2. Time
- 3. Day
- 4. Date



After the vehicle is powered on, you can tap the screen OFF switch or on the screen as required to turn off or activate the passenger screen. You can also click on the icon in CSD, select to **Display**, and click to **TURN ON** or **TURN OFF** switch on this interface to activate or deactivate the passenger screen.

Tap on the passenger screen, and slide the screen left and right to switch the multimedia content.

If the front passenger seat belt is not fastened and the door opening may induce a risk of collision, the passenger screen will display safety information.

⚠ Warning!

The front passenger shall pay attention to the important reminder messages displayed on the passenger screen. Ignoring these messages may result in serious damages to the vehicle or persons.

Check vehicle trip information

Press the TRIP button on the wiper lever to switch among mileage, Trip 1, and Trip 2; On the interface of Trip 1 or Trip 2, press and hold TRIP button again to reset Trip 1 or Trip 2.



TRIP button

To check the mileage and reset trip 1 or trip 2, operate as follows:

1. Press and release the TRIP button for the first time to check the mileage in the instrument cluster.



Mileage

2. Press and release the TRIP button for the second time to check Trip 1 (mileage and average power consumption) in the instrument cluster; On the interface of Trip 1, press and hold the TRIP button again to reset Trip 1.



Trip 1 and average power consumption

Press and release the TRIP button for the third time to check Trip 2 (mileage and average power consumption) in the instrument cluster; On the interface of Trip 2, press and hold the TRIP button again to reset Trip 2.



Trip 2 and average power consumption

① Note!

- The mileage cannot be reset by operating the TRIP button.
- If the TRIP button is not operated for a period of time, the mileage interface will automatically exit.

Indicators and warning lamps

Indicator icon



Direction indicator lamps: when the light combination switch is turned downward, the left indicator will flash. When the hazard warning lamp is switched on, the direction indicator lamps on both sides will flash simultaneously.



Direction indicator lamps: when the light combination switch is turned upward, the right indicator will flash. When the hazard warning lamp is switched on, the direction indicator lamps on both sides will flash simultaneously.



High beam: this indicator will be illuminated when the high beam is turned on.



Adaptive driving beam(ADB): this indicator will be illuminated in white when the ADB is turned on but not activated.



Adaptive driving beam (ADB): after the ADB is turned on, when activated, this indicator will be illuminated.



Rear fog lamp: this indicator will be illuminated when the rear fog lamp is turned on.



Position lamp: this indicator will be illuminated when the position lamp is turned on.



Auto wiping indicator: the indicator will be illuminated when the auto wiping function of the wiper is turned on.



READY: when the vehicle is ready to go, this indicator will be illuminated.



Automatic speed limit alarm (ASLA) off: this indicator will be illuminated when ASLA is turned off.



Lane keeping assist (LKA) off: this indicator will be illuminated when the LKA is turned off



Autonomous emergency braking (AEB) off: this indicator will be illuminated when AEB is turned off.



Adaptive cruise control (ACC): this indicator will be illuminated in white when the ACC is ready to be activated.



Adaptive cruise control (ACC): this indicator will be illuminated when the ACC is active.



Highway assist (HWA)*: this indicator will be illuminated in white when the HWA is ready to be activated.



Highway assist (HWA)*: this indicator will be illuminated when the HWA is active.



Highway assist (HWA)*: this indicator will be illuminated when the steering assistance is not available.



High voltage battery capacity: when the high voltage battery capacity is normal, the white indicator is illuminated.



High voltage battery capacity: when the battery is low, the yellow indicator is illuminated.



Closure status: this indicator will be illuminated When any of the doors, the bonnet or the tailgate is open.



Charging plug connection: this indicator will be illuminated when a charge plug is connected to the vehicle.



Child detection: this indicator will be illuminated when the child detection function is turned off.



Drive power limited: the indicator will be illuminated when the drive power is limited.



Electronic stability control (ESC) off: this indicator will be illuminated when the ESC is turned off.



Electronic parking brake (EPB): this indicator will be illuminated when EPB is turned on.



Auto hold: this indicator will be illuminated when the auto hold is activated.



Energy recovery level: this indicator will be illuminated When the vehicle energy recovery level is set to off.



Energy recovery level: this indicator will be illuminated When the vehicle energy recovery level is set to low.



Energy recovery level: this indicator will be illuminated When the vehicle energy recovery level is set to medium.



Energy recovery level: this indicator will be illuminated When the vehicle energy recovery level is set to high.

Warning lamp icon

⚠ Warning!

- If the warning lamp stays on, it indicates that certain important functions have been disabled, or there is a serious malfunction in the vehicle that may cause a safety risk. Before driving, make sure the fault is cleared. If you do not understand the troubleshooting method, please contact your Lotus retailer.
- When the vehicle is started, the warning lamp illuminates and self-tests, and the warning lamp goes out when the self-test is completed.

Warnings and fault messages will be displayed on the instrument cluster or CSD. Some messages are accompanied by an audible signal or a corresponding warning lamp illuminated.



Low beam failure: this warning lamp will be illuminated when the low beam fails.



Adaptive frontlighting system (AFS) activation: this warning lamp will be illuminated when the AFS fails.



Adaptive driving beam (ADB): this warning lamp will be illuminated when the ADB fails



Adaptive cruise control (ACC): this indicator will beturned grey when the ACC is not available.



High beam failure: this warning lamp will be illuminated when the high beam fails.



Highway assist (HWA)*: this indicator will be turned grey when the HWA is not available.



Position lamp failure: this warning lamp will be illuminated when the position lamp fails.



High voltage battery failure: this indicator will be illuminated when the high voltage battery fails.



Automatic speed limit alarm (ASLA) failure: this warning lamp will be illuminated when ASLA fails.



System failure: this indicator will be illuminated when the system fails.



Lane keep assist (LKA) failure: this warning lamp will be illuminated when the LKA is not available.



Drive motor failure: this indicator will be illuminated when the drive motor fails.



Advanced emergency braking (AEB) failure: this warning lamp will be illuminated when the AEB fails.



Transmission failure: this indicator will be illuminated in yellow when the transmission performance is degraded.



Transmission failure: this indicator will be illuminated in red when the transmission fails.



Brake wear: this warning lamp will be illuminated when the friction linings are worn to the limit or the warning is short-circuited.



Driver fatigue detection system failure: this warning lamp will be illuminated when DPS fails.



Rear collision warning (RCW) failure: this warning lamp will be illuminated when the RCW fails.



Headlight levelling failure: this warning lamp will be illuminated when the headlight levelling fails.



12V battery charging failure: this warning lamp will be illuminated when the charging system fails.



Air suspension system failure: when the air suspension system experiences performance loss/temporary reduction, the yellow warning lamp comes on.



Air suspension system failure: this warning lamp will be illuminated in red when the air suspension system fails, and the system will disable the air suspension.



Tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS) failure: this indicator will be illuminated when the pressure of one or more tyres is too low. This warning lamp flashes a few times and then remains on when the TPMS fails.



Electronic stability control (ESC) failure: this warning lamp stays on when the ESC fails. It flashes when the ESC is working.



Steering system failure: this warning lamp will be illuminated in yellow when the assisted performance of steering system is reduced/the assisted power is degraded/the rear wheel steering function is temporarily withdrawn.



Steering system failure: this warning lamp will be illuminated in red when the assisted power of steering system is degraded/lost/the rear wheel steering function is abnormally faulty.Rear wheel steering failure and front wheel steering failure share a warning lamp.



Seat belt reminder: when the seat belt is not fastened, the warning lamp is lit, which means that the warning lamp of the corresponding seat is lit at the same time.



Brake system failure: when there is general brake system faults or park brake faults occurred, the yellow warning light is illuminated.



Brake system failure: this warning lamp will be illuminated in red when the brake fluid level is low, the brake fluid level sensor is faulty and/or the EBD is faulty.



Airbag failure: this warning lamp will be illuminated when the airbag system or pretensioner system fails.



Anti-lock braking system (ABS) failure: this indicator will be illuminated when the ABS fails.

Head-up display (HUD)

Head-up display (HUD) projects vehicle-related information onto the windscreen so that it is easier for the driver to obtain legible information rapidly while driving.



The position of the HUD projection

HUD settings



- 1. HUD on/off
- 2. HUD ADJUSTMENT

You can tap the @ icon on CSD, and then select **Display** to switch to HUD setting interface, where **HUD ADJUSTMENT** can be selected to activate HUD settings and switch between different modes.

① Note!

 After the HUD settings is activated on CSD, it needs to be set by the multi-function button on the right side of the steering wheel. You may not observe the HUD clearly if you are wearing polarized sunglasses. Please adjust the brightness of the HUD or take off your sunglasses.

HUD settings on steering wheel

■ Turn the menu/voice button upward to activate HUD settings.



- Menu/voice button
- 2. Right multi-function button
- Turn the right multi-function button left and right to switch to HUD, and press the right multi-function button to switch to HUD setting interface.



 Swipe the right multifunction key left and right to set HUD on or off, adjust height and angle, brightness, and snow mode.

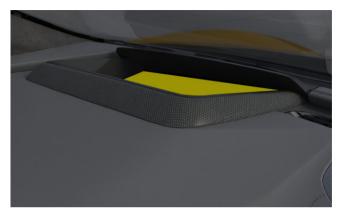
Switch to HUD on or off, Advanced, snow mode, press the right multifunction button to set.

Switch to HUD height, angle adjustment, brightness, and toggle the right multifunction key up and down to set it.



HUD cleaning and maintenance

Clean the inside of the windscreen to remove any dirt or film that may reduce the brightness or clarity of the HUD image. Clean the HUD lens with a soft cloth sprayed with glass cleaner. Wipe the lens gently and allow it to dry.



The location of the HUD

⚠ Warning!

- Before driving, make sure to check that the position and brightness of the HUD will not interfere with safe driving. Improper adjustment of the image position or brightness may obstruct the driver's field of vision and cause an accident, resulting in personal injury.
- Do not keep looking at HUD while driving, otherwise you may fail to see pedestrians and objects on the road ahead.

L Caution!

 Do not allow liquids entering into the projector area as this may cause electrical failure.

- Do not place any objects and stickers on the projector or the projection area of the front windscreen, otherwise the HUD may not function properly to display.
- Do not touch the inside of the projector or throw objects into the projector as this may damage the HUD.

① Note!

- If the front windscreen needs to be replaced, please contact Lotus retailer for replacement as soon as possible.
- The driver can turn on the snow mode when driving in snow or when the road surface is heavily reflective.

Lighting

Exterior lighting control

Light stalk switch

Turn the roller on the stalk switch to set the type of exterior lighting.



Light stalk switch



Low beam: when the roller is rotated to this position, the low beam, position lamp and rear registration plate lamp will be turned on.



Auto light: when the roller is rotated to this position, the auto light function is turned on. When the light intensity is sufficient, the front position lamp will be off, and the DRL and the rear position lamp will be automatically activated. When the light intensity is insufficient, the low beam, front & rear position lamps and rear registration lamp will be automatically activated.



Parking lights: when the gear is shifted to parking mode (P) and the roller is momentarily rotated to this position, the low beam is turned off and the parking lights remain turned on. The roller will automatically turn back to AUTO position. If the roller is rotated and held in this position for 2s, all external lights will be turned off. When the gear is then shifted to drive mode (D), the external lights will enter AUTO mode and the parking lamps indicator on the instrument cluster is illuminated.

When the roller is turned to the position lamp, the front/rear position lamp and rear registration plate lamp will remain on until the battery is depleted.

High beam



High beam switch

The roller should be located at $\mathbb{I} \mathbb{D}$. If you turn the stalk switch forward, the high beam will turn on, and the high beam indicator on $\mathbb{I} \mathbb{D}$ the instrument cluster will be illuminated.

The roller is located at **AUTO** . Push the stalk switch forward to activates the adaptive driving beam (ADB) function. A second push of the stalk can turn the high beam on. The intelligent high beam light on the instrument cluster is changing $\Xi \Theta$ the ADB indicator.

① Note!

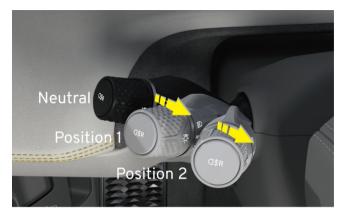
The exterior lights of the car can cause fogging on the inside under specific climate and physical conditions. The fogging phenomenon will not affect function and service life. After the vehicle is driven or parked for a period of time, the fog will naturally dissipate. Turning on the headlights can accelerate the dissipation of the fog.

Adaptive driving beam

The ADB can automatically turn on and off the local matrix of the high beam to avoid affecting the vehicles ahead or the vehicles in opposite lanes.

When the ADB is activated, the corresponding indicator on the instrument cluster will be illuminated as follows:

- White: ADB activated.
- Blue: ADB on.
- Orange: ADB failed.



Adaptive driving beam switch

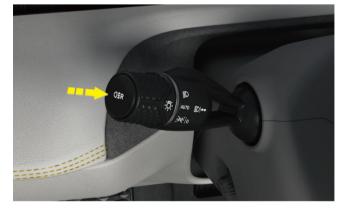
When the high beams are turned on, turn back the stalk switch to the level I position and the high beams will be turned off. When the high beams are off, turn back the stalk switch to the level I position, and the overtake lamp will flash. After the stalk switch is released, it will reset automatically and the high beams will go out.

When the high beams are illuminated or the ADB is activated, turn back the stalk switch to the level II position, and the high beam or ADB will be turned off. When the high beams are off, turn back the stalk switch to the level II position, and the high beams will light up. After the stalk switch is released, it will reset automatically and the high beams will be turned off.

⚠ Warning!

ADB is only an auxiliary lighting system. The driver shall always be responsible to manually switch between high and low beams correctly according to the traffic conditions, visibility and legal requirements.

Rear fog lamp



Rear fog lamp switch

Turn the roller to \mathbb{SD} or **AUTO**, and press the rear fog lamp switch to turn on the rear fog lamps. At this time, the rear fog lamp indicator \mathbb{O}^{\ddagger} on the instrument cluster will be illuminated.

Direction indicator lamp



Direction indicator lamp switch

Move the stalk switch up/down slightly, and the direction indicator lamps \hookrightarrow or \hookrightarrow will flash a few times and then turn off.

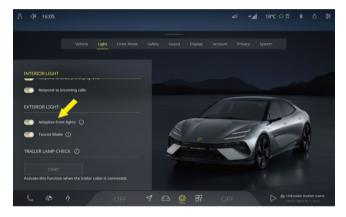
Turn the stalk switch up/down to the bottom or top, and the direction indicator lamps \hookrightarrow or \Longrightarrow will flash continuously.

Automatic headlamp levelling

The headlamps are provided with automatic levelling function, which is activated depending on the load case of the vehicle and the road conditions

Adaptive lighting

Adaptive front lights will automatically adjust the angle and range of illumination to suit different driving conditions, projecting an effective light beam on the road ahead to provide you with good illumination.



You can tap the @ icon on the CSD and select **Light** to access the exterior light setting interface, where you can tap to turn on or off the adaptive front lights.

Handlebar light



When the ambient light outside the vehicle is insufficient, the handlebar light will be illuminated to illuminate the inside of the door handle for the convenience of vehicle unlocking, and then it will be automatically extinguished after a period of time.

Follow-me-home

When the outside ambient light is insufficient, some of the exterior lights can remain on for a period of time after the vehicle is locked.

Welcome show



You can tap the @ icon on the CSD and select **Vehicle** to access the welcome function setting interface, where the welcome show can be activated.

When you are unlocking the vehicle from the outside, some of the exterior lights will be illuminated, accompanied by the AGS, active rear spoiler, and front lidar deploying and retracting.

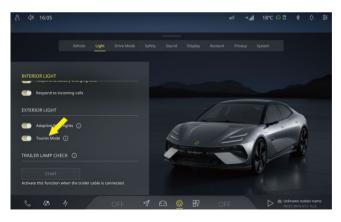
When you are locking the vehicle from the outside, some of the exterior lights will be illuminated.

① Note!

- If the door sill lamp is equipped, it will be lighted up immediately after you open the door to facilitate you getting on in a dim environment.
- When the vehicle in a non sleep state is unlocked using the key fob and mobile APP, the front lidar may not deploy.

Tourist mode

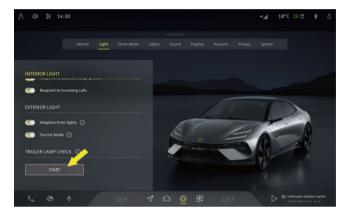
When driving a vehicle to a country or region where the traffic system (LHD/RHD) has changed, the low beam light type must be adjusted to avoid causing glare to the opposite driver. This can be switched in the CSD.



You can click the icon @ on the CSD, and select **Light** to enter the external light setting interface, where you can click to turn on or off the **Tourist Mode**

Towing light inspection*

When your vehicle is towing trailer, you can test the towing lamps for normal function after the towed trailer is connected.



You can tap the © icon on the CSD and select **Light** to access the exterior light setting interface, where you can tap **START** to test the towing lamps for normal function.

Interior lighting control

Ambient lamp*

The ambient lamp is divided into dynamic ambient lamp and static ambient lamp, of which the dynamic ambient lamp can show the effect of dynamic water flow, while the static ambient lamp enables a variety of colour changes.



Tap the @ icon on the CSD and tap **Light** to access the light setting interface, where you can turn on or off the ambient lights.

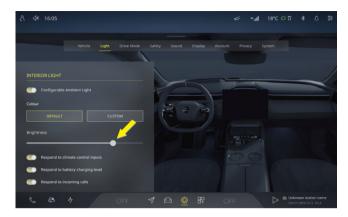
Ambient lamp adjustment inside the car*



- 1. System default colour
- 2. Custom colour adjustment mode

Select the custom colour adjustment mode of ambient lamp to freely choose the colour of the ambient lamp.

The ambient lamp can be associated with A/C, charging and incoming call, and it changes according to the different states of the vehicle.



You can drag the slider to anywhere on the brightness adjustment slider to set the brightness of ambient lamp.

Auto adjustment of display brightness*



Click the $^{\textcircled{0}}$ icon on the CSD and click **Display** to access the display brightness setting interface. Then click to turn on or off the auto adjustment.

After turning on the auto adjustment switch, the display brightness will be automatically adjusted according to the cockpit brightness intensity.

① Note!

 To ensure the experience of auto display brightness adjustment, please keep the area below the CSD clean. Manually adjust the display brightness to the maximum brightness, and then turn on the auto adjustment to make the brightness of the display autom adjusted brighter.

Reading lamp



Front reading lamp switch

Tap the reading lamp switch, and the ambient lamp in the outer ring of the reading lamp will be illuminated in white before the reading lamp does.

Touch the corresponding side reading lamp to light up the reading lamp. Touch again to turn it off.

The intensity of the reading lamp can be adjusted by touching the corresponding side reading lamp. The longer the touching lasts, the higher the intensity.

① Note!

When the front reading lamps are turned on, the surrounding ambient lamp will be illuminated in white without colour change effect.

⚠ Warning!

When the ambient light is weak, do not turn on the front reading lamps while driving. Otherwise the front windscreen may have reflections, resulting in unclear visibility of the road ahead and further a safety accident.



Rear reading lamp



Rear reading lamp*

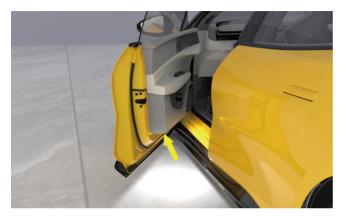
For the operation method of rear reading lamp, refer to front reading lamp.

Boot light



When the tailgate is opened, the boot light will be illuminated automatically. When the tailgate is closed, the boot light will go out automatically.

Floor light



When the external environment is dark, the floor lights will be illuminated automatically as the doors are opened and they will automatically go out as the doors are closed.

Wiper control

Front windscreen wiper and washer



Front windscreen wiper switch



Single wiping: when the wiper lever is turned down from position 0, the wiper will start working and then return to the lowest point after single wiping.



Turning off windscreen wiper: when the wiper lever is turned to position 0, the windscreen wipers will be turned off.



Continuous wiping at normal speed: when the wiper lever is turned upwards, the wipers will work at normal speed.



Fast continuous wiping: when the wiper lever is turned upwards further, the wiping speed will be accelerated.

Caution!

Before using the wipers, be sure to remove the ice and snow from the windscreen to ensure that the wiper blades are not frozen at fixed positions.

① Note!

- When there are foreign objects such as dust, bird droppings, insects, and tree pulp on the windscreen, please clean the windscreen first, otherwise the wiper blades may be damaged.
- When using the wiper to clean the windscreen, it should work with the washing liquid, otherwise both the wipers and the windscreen may be damaged.
- Please check the wiper blades on a regular basis. If scheduled maintenance is not carried out properly, the service life of the wiper blades will be shortened.

 Please use acceptable detergent, as non-conforming detergent products may cause damage to the washer or corrosion to the glass.

Automatic rain-sensing wiper



Rain light sensor module (RLSM)

When the driver door is closed and the driver seat sensor detects that the driver seat is occupied, the rain light sensor module (RLSM) will automatically activate the front windscreen wipers according to the rainfall intensity.



Auto wiping: when the wiper lever is toggled to the AUTO position, the \mathfrak{P} indicator on the instrument cluster will be illuminated and the auto wiping function of the wiper will be activated.

Caution!

Before activating maintenance mode or using the auto-wash function, disable the auto wiping function. Otherwise, the wiper may be activated accidentally, causing damage to the vehicle. Refer to **Inspection and replacement of wiper blade** (p.335).



The sensitivity of the induced rainfall can be adjusted by turning the sensitivity scroll wheel of the RLSM upward and downward. The higher the sensitivity when turning the scroll wheel upward, the shorter the wiping interval will be. Conversely, the lower the sensitivity when turning the scroll wheel downward, the longer the wiping interval will be.

Caution!

Do not rely solely on the automatic rain-sensing wipers. Always adjust the wiping manually according to the actual situation.

Front windscreen washer



Front windscreen wiper switch

Toggle the wiper lever backward, and the washer sprays water, and the wipers wipe a few times before returning to the lowest point. Addition of washer fluid: when the washer fluid reservoir is lower than 1.0L, a relevant prompt message will be displayed in the CSD to remind the driver to add washer fluid. Refer to **Windscreen washer fluid** (p.334).

⚠ Warning!

In the cold season, if the washer fluid freezes on the windscreen, do not use the wipers, or the line of sight might be obscured, thus causing traffic accidents or casualties.

Automatic heating of wiper

When the ambient temperature is too low, the vehicle automatically heats the wiper arm to prevent the nozzle of the water wiper from being frozen by rain and snow.

Wing mirror adjustment

Outside mirror adjustment

The outside wing mirror reflects the road behind, to the side, and underneath the vehicle, allowing you to indirectly see the conditions in those locations and expanding your field of vision.

⚠ Warning!

- When you check the road conditions outside the vehicle by the outside wing mirrors, you should judge the traffic conditions and drive carefully.
- Objects in the mirror may appear farther away than they actually are.

Lens adjustment



Outside wing mirror adjustment switch

The outside wing mirror adjustment switch is located on the driver door trim panel.

Press the outside wing mirror adjustment switch to activate the outside wing mirror adjustment. Press it again to switch the outside wing mirror. The outside wing mirrors can be adjusted by the multi-function button on the right side of the steering wheel if activated.



 Move the menu/voice button upward to activate the outside wing mirror adjustment. Scroll the right multi-function button left and right to switch to corresponding outside wing mirror.



- 1. Menu/voice button
- 2. Right multi-function button
- Scroll the right multi-function button up/down and left/right to adjust the lens position. And press the right multi-function button to confirm the selection.



Streaming mirror adjustment interface via steering wheel button*

① Note!

When the vehicle is started, the streaming mirror will start the self-test. If you find a fault warning message on the screen, please contact Lotus retailer in time.

 Press the streaming mirror adjustment switch to activate the streaming mirror adjustment. Press it again to switch the streaming mirror. The streaming mirror can be adjusted by the multi-function button on the right side of the steering wheel if activated.



 Scroll the menu/voice button to activate the outside wing mirror adjustment. Scroll the right multi-function button left and right to switch to the corresponding streaming mirror.



- 1. Menu/voice button
- 2. Right multi-function button
- Scroll the right multi-function button up/down and left/right to adjust the camera position, and press the right multi-function button to confirm the selection.



⚠ Warning!

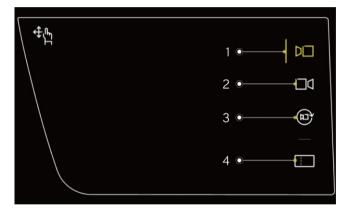
Do not cover the sensor or display. Dirt, ice and snow, if accumulated on the camera, may degrade its function and performance. Always pay attention to the cleanliness of the camera and its surroundings to avoid traffic accidents.

① Note!

- When the vehicle is started, the streaming mirror will start the self-test. If you find a fault alarm message on the screen, please contact the Lotus retailer in time.
- The streaming mirror can effectively minimize the driving blind spot, expand your field of vision, and improve the safety of driving and parking.

After the vehicle has been locked for a period of time, the streaming mirrors will be automatically turned off. For a period of time after the screen goes out, the streaming mirrors will not go into sleep state so that you can quickly wake up the screen when entering the vehicle.

Streaming mirror adjustment interface via touch screen*



- Left view switch
- 2. Right view switch
- 3. Reset switch
- 4. High definition (HD)/wide Field of view (FOV) switch

① Note!

- Press and hold the reset switch to restore both streaming media screens to the default view of the current mode.
- After switching to R gear, you can adjust the reverse angle by using the multifunction button on the right of the steering wheel or clicking and dragging the streaming media interface. The system will memorize the angle you adjusted.
- In R gear, the HD/wide-angle view change-over switch will be deactivated.

You can tap and drag the driver side streaming mirror interface to select different perspectives as required, and tap the left/right side view switch to switch to the corresponding streaming interface.

Tap the reset switch to reset the view of the corresponding streaming mirror interface. Press and hold the reset switch to reset the left and right side view at the same time.

You can also tap the FOV switch to select HD or wide FOV (temporary), and the system will memorize your selection.

The HD is the default FOV. The wide FOV is a temporary FOV that provides a wider FOV.



High definition field of view

In HD FOV, the streaming mirror interface displays a prompt icon for FOV adjustment.



Wide field of view

⚠ Warning!

- After the use of wide FOV, the HD FOV shall be switched back.
- In the case of bad eyesight caused by age or physical illness, the driver shall wear appropriate glasses to correct eyesight, so as to avoid traffic accidents or casualties due to the inability to clearly observe the information on the display.



Streaming mirror fault

When any of the following faults occurs to the streaming mirror, a flag bit will be displayed on the streaming interface and a text message will be displayed on the instrument cluster. Please observe and contact Lotus retailer in time.

Camera fault

- Display fault
- Control unit fault

⚠ Warning!

- Do not rely too much on the streaming mirror. When the streaming mirror fails, the view may be delayed, blurred, or not displayed.
- Please do not add artifacts such as pendants and stickers to the external camera and internal display of the streaming media rearview mirror. Otherwise, it may cause traffic accidents or personal injuries due to obstructing the line of sight.
- Sunlight or other strong light shining or reflecting on the streaming media rearview mirror display may make it difficult for you to see images or warning messages. Drivers should be extra vigilant and careful when driving in strong light environments.
- Streaming Media rearview mirrors rely on high-quality video streaming and cannot completely avoid short interruptions, delays, blue screen restarts, and other situations caused by external electrical/magnetic interference in extreme situations. In case of abnormalities, drivers should carefully leave the interference area or slowly pull over to the side of the road to ensure safety, and continue driving after returning to normal. If there is no recovery for a long time, please contact Lotus retailer.

Folding of outside wing mirror



Outside wing mirror folding switch

The outside wing mirror folding switch is located on the driver door inner trim panel.

When the car is powered on or in READY state, press the outside wing mirror folding switch to allow the mirrors on both sides to be folded or unfolded simultaneously.

⚠ Warning!

Do not adjust the streaming mirrors while the car is running, otherwise it may cause personal injury or death and property damage. Before you are driving the vehicle, ensure that the streaming mirrors have been unfolded and properly adjusted. If

manual reset is required, please check whether there are foreign objects such as ice and snow on the folding surface, and remove them before resetting, otherwise the folding structure of the streaming mirrors can be damaged.

Folding of streaming mirror*



Streaming mirror folding switch

The streaming mirror folding switch is located on the driver door inner trim panel.



Streaming mirror folding

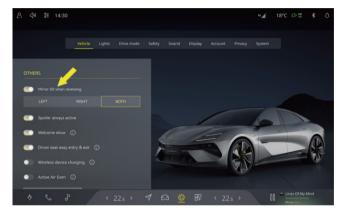
When the car is powered on or in READY state, press the streaming mirror folding switch to allow the mirrors on both sides to be folded or unfolded simultaneously.

⚠ Warning!

Do not adjust the streaming mirror while the car is running, otherwise personal injury or property damage may be caused. Before you are driving the car, ensure that the streaming mirror have been unfolded and properly adjusted. If manual reset is required, please check whether there are foreign objects such as ice and snow on the folding surface, and remove them before resetting, otherwise the folding structure of the streaming mirror can be easily damaged.

Mirror flip-down when reversing

When the R gear is engaged, the outside wing mirrors will automatically adjust their angle downward, thus enabling the driver to observe the ground more clearly. After the R gear is disengaged, the outside wing mirrors will return to their normal position.



Tap the @ icon on CSD and select **Vehicle** to activate/deactivate the function of outside wing mirror tilt when reversing.

With the function of mirror tilt when reversing activated, you can choose to fold down the left, right or both side mirrors and save.

① Note!

 When the reversing speed is greater than 10km/h, the outside wing mirrors will return to the normal position. When flipping down the rearview mirror in reverse, the rearview mirror flipping angle can be adjusted and memorized.

Streaming media rearview mirror reversing view switch*

When the vehicle is in reverse gear (R) and the speed is less than 10km/h, the viewing angle of the streaming media rearview mirror automatically adjusts to the viewing angle memorized by the system when it was in reverse gear (R) last time, and the streaming media interface will display the R gear icon. At this time, adjustmentcan be made, and the system will remember the viewing angle you adjusted. After exiting reverse gear (R), the viewing angle of the streaming media rearview mirror returns to the normal position.

When the reversing speed is greater than or equal to 10km/h, the streaming media exterior rearview mirror will return to its normal position.



Outside wing mirror heating



Tap the **TEMP** in the CSD to switch to A/C control interface where you can activate or deactivate the defrosting/defogging function of the outside wing mirrors to remove rain, water mist or ice and snow from the mirror.



Outside wing mirror heating via tunnel console

By pressing the initial icon on the tunnel console, you can activate or deactivate the defrosting/defogging function of the outside wing mirrors to remove rain, water mist or ice and snow from the mirrors.

Streaming mirror heating*

The rear camera of the streaming mirror has a heating function, which can provide a better driving environment for the driver in external environments such as rain, snow and at night.



Click the **TEMP** in the CSD to switch to the climate control interface where you can activate or deactivate the defrosting/defogging function of the streaming mirror to remove rain, water mist or ice and snow from the camera.

Adjustment of streaming mirror brightness*

You can tap the @ icon in the CSD, select **Display** (p.306) to access the brightness adjustment interface and drag the slider to anywhere to adjust the brightness.

① Note!

The streaming mirror can also monitor the ambient light intensity through a photosensitive sensor and automatically adjust the brightness.

Automatic anti-glare outside wing mirror

When the ambient light outside the vehicle is insufficient and the drive (D) gear is engaged, the automatic anti-glare outside wing mirror can automatically weaken the light from the rear, so that the rear view is kept in a good observation state.

When the car is engaged in R gear or the power is turned off, this function will be turned off automatically.

Inside mirror adjustment



Inside wing mirror

Just hold the outside of the inside wing mirror to adjust the angle of the inside wing mirror to an appropriate position.

⚠ Warning!

- Do not adjust the inside wing mirror while driving.
- Do not hang anything on the inside wing mirror.

Caution!

Do not over adjust the angle of the inside wing mirror to prevent damage to the mirror.

Automatic anti-glare function of inside wing mirror

The automatic anti-glare function of inside wing mirror can automatically dampen the light coming from the rear depending on the light detected by the sensors on the mirror, so that the rear field of view is kept in a good state of observation.

When you engage the vehicle in R gear or turn off the power, this function will be turned off automatically.

! Caution!

Do not block the sensor on the inside wing mirror, and clean the surface of the sensor in time to avoid the decline of anti-glare performance.

Garage door opener(HomeLink)*

Once the garage is connected to HomeLink, you can press the button on the lower edge of the inside mirror to open or close the

garage door if the receiver of the garage door is within the effective range of remote control by HomeLink in the vehicle.

⚠ Warning!

Before setting up or using HomeLink, make sure people or items are far from the garage door so as to prevent serious injury or damage.

Creating HomeLink



HomeLink indicator

Park your vehicle steadily in front of the garage door and create HomeLink observing the following steps:

Press and release the button that needs to be set on the lower. edge of the inside mirror, and then check if the HomeLink indicator can slowly flash orange.

(i) Note!

If not, refer to **Deleting HomeLink** (p.140).

- 2. Press and hold the garage door remote opening/closing button near the button that needs to be set (2-8cm), and if the HomeLink indicator remains in green or flashes guickly, release the garage door remote control.
- 3. Press and release the button that needs to be set, and if the HomeLink indicator remains in green, it means the garage door can be opened/closed normally, i.e., the setting is completed.

(i) Note!

- Press and release the button that needs to be set, and if the HomeLink indicator flashes green quickly, press and hold the set button for 3s and repeat this operation for no more than 3 times. Then the garage door can be opened/closed normally, i.e., the setting is completed.
- If there are two buttons respectively to remotely control the opening and closing of the garage door, it is necessary for you to select any two buttons on the lower edge of

the inside mirror to complete the creation of opening and closing.

Press and release the button that needs to be set, then the HomeLink indicator can flash green quickly; if the garage door still cannot be opened/closed normally after three times of pressing and holding the button that has been set for 3s, observe the following steps to create HomeLink:

 Find "Learning"/"Intelligent"/"Program" button on the garage door opening motor.

① Note!

The location, name, and color of the buttons may vary with the manufacturers, therefore please refer to the user manuals.

- Press and release the "Learning"/"Intelligent"/"Program" button, and then perform the next step within 30s.
- 3. Press and hold the button that needs to be set for 2s, repeat this operation for 3 times, and then press and release the button that needs to be set. The garage door will be opened/closed normally, i.e., the setting is completed.

Deleting HomeLink

To delete HomeLink on three buttons simultaneously, you can press and hold the left and right buttons at the same time for more than 10s, and when the HomeLink indicator changes from continuous lighting to rapid flashing, release the two buttons.

Caution!

- It is not allowed to press and hold for more than 20s.
- HomeLink on a single button cannot be deleted. If you want to change it, please refer to Resetting HomeLink (p.140).

Resetting HomeLink on a single button

If the HomeLink on a single button is abnormal and needs to be reset or replaced, observe the following steps to complete the resettina:

- Press and hold the button on which the HomeLink needs to be reset, and after 20s, check that the HomeLink indicator slowly flashes orange.
- 2. After releasing the button that needs to be reset, refer to **Creating HomeLink** (p.139) to reset or replace HomeLink.

① Note!

If you do not reset or replace HomeLink with reference to **Creating HomeLink**, it will restore to the previously stored HomeLink.

Seat

Front seat adjustment

Front seat adjustment

The electric adjustment button can be used to adjust the seat to a comfortable sitting position.



Front seat adjustment switch

 Move the front end of the control button up/down to adjust the angle of the seat cushion. Move the rear end of the control button up/down to adjust the height of the seat cushion. Move

- the control button forward/backward to adjust the seat forward and backward.
- Move the control button forward/backward to adjust the seat backrest angle.
- 3. Press the top/bottom/front/rear of the lumbar support control button to adjust the lumbar support.

Front seat adjustment*

The electric adjustment button can be used to adjust the seat to a comfortable sitting position.



Front seat adjustment switch

 Press the front/rear of the control button to adjust the cushion extension.

- Move the front end of the control button up/down to adjust the angle of the seat cushion. Move the rear end of the control button up/down to adjust the height of the seat cushion. Move the control button forward/backward to adjust the seat forward and backward.
- 3. Press the front/rear of the control button to adjust the seat backrest flank support.
- Move the control button forward/backward to adjust the seat backrest angle. Move the control button up/down to adjust the headrest height.
- 5. Press the top/bottom/front/rear of the combination button to adjust the lumbar support. Press the middle 🔊 of the combination button to activate the seat massage function.

⚠ Warning!

- Do not adjust the seat while the vehicle is in motion, otherwise it may cause the vehicle to lose control, resulting in accidents.
- The seat should be correctly adjusted and positioned as far back as possible to get comfortable ride and easy handling while ensuring proper operation of the brake pedal.
- Do not put your feet on the instrument panel or extend your feet out of the window, as this may cause personal injury.
- Do not incline the seat backrest excessively, otherwise the seat belt will fail to provide sufficient protection effect. For example, in the event of an accident or sudden braking, the person

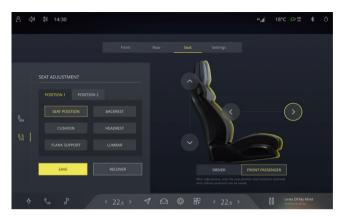
- wearing the seat belt of the over-inclined seat may get lower than the seat belt and thus injured.
- Before moving the seat, make sure that the seat movement area is unobstructed so as to prevent damaging items or pinching occupants.
- After the vehicle is powered off, the electric adjustment function
 of the front seat still works. Do not leave children alone in the
 vehicle, otherwise there may be a risk of accident.
- Do not adjust the driver seat or steering wheel while driving.

① Note!

- The front seat headrest is an integrated headrest that cannot be disassembled.
- You can only operate up to two electric seat adjustment switches at a time to adjust the seat.

Central display to adjust the front seats

You can also adjust the front seats in the CSD.



Switch to the front seat adjustment interface via the voice function or by clicking **Seat** in the CSD air conditioning control interface. After the front seat adjustment is completed, click **SAVE** to store the current position of the seat.

Click **RECOVER** to return to the saved memory location.

① Note!

- When the seat is adjusted using the power adjustment buttons on the seat, it cannot be adjusted using the CSD.
- It is not possible to adjust the main driver's seat using the centre display at speeds greater than 5 km/h.

Easy access

The easy access function allows the driver to leave or enter the vehicle more conveniently by automatic adjustment of seat.



Click the $^{\textcircled{o}}$ icon in the CSD and select the **Vehicle** ,to turn on or off the easy access function.

The easy access function will be activated (if turned on) when the driver opens the door while sitting in the driver seat, allowing the seat to be retracted to facilitate the driver's exit.

Once someone is detected on the corresponding seat after the driver side door is closed, the driver seat will automatically adjust to the position where the driver got off the car last time.

Caution!

In the process of easy access, please pay attention to the rear passengers to avoid squeezing and collision. You can interrupt the easy access by manually adjusting the seat switch.

① Note!

The easy access function, if turned on, will also not work when the driver seat is not far from the rearmost position.

Rear seat adjustment

Rear seat adjustment for 5-seater model

The electric adjustment button can be used to adjust the seat position to a comfortable sitting position.



Rear seat adjustment for 5-seater model

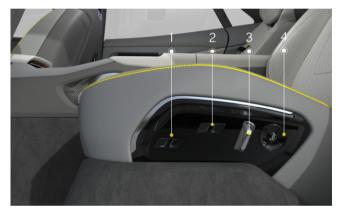
Move the control button forward/backward to adjust the seat backrest angle.

⚠ Warning!

- Do not extend your feet out of the window, or place them on the seat, as this may cause personal injury.
- Do not incline the seat backrest excessively, otherwise the protection effect of the seat belt will not be guaranteed. For example, in the event of an accident or sudden braking, the person wearing the belt of the over-inclined seat may get lower than the seat belt and thus injured.

- Before moving the seat, make sure that the seat movement area is unobstructed so as to prevent damaging items or pinching passengers.
- After the vehicle is powered off, the electric adjustment function
 of rear seat still works. Do not leave children alone in the
 vehicle, otherwise there may be a risk of injury.

Rear seat adjustment for 4-seater model*



Rear seat adjustment for 4-seater model*

The electric adjustment button can be used to adjust the seat position to a comfortable sitting position.

 Press the front/rear of the control button to adjust the cushion extension.

- Press the front/rear of the control button to adjust the back support.
- 3. Move the control button forward/backward to adjust the seat backrest angle.
- 4. Press the top/bottom/front/rear of the combination button to adjust the lumbar support. Press the middle 🗳 of the combination button to activate the seat massage function.

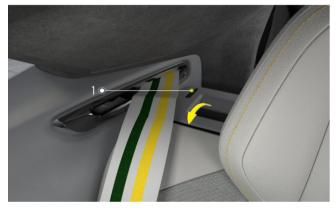
⚠ Warning!

- Do not extend your feet out of the window, or place them on the seat, as this may cause personal injury.
- Do not incline the seat backrest excessively, otherwise the protection effect of the seat belt cannot be guaranteed. For example, in the event of an accident or sudden braking, the person wearing the belt of the over-inclined seat may get lower than the seat belt and thus injured.
- Before moving the seat, make sure that the seat movement area is unobstructed so as to prevent damaging items or pinching passengers.
- After the vehicle is powered off, the electric adjustment function of rear seat still works. Do not leave children alone in the vehicle, otherwise there may be a risk of injury.

① Note!

You can only operate up to two electric seat adjustment switches at a time to adjust the seat.

Rear seat folding/unfolding



Locking device located on the outside of headrest

Unlocking indicator

Press the locking device and fold the rear seat backrest forward when the unlocking indicator is fully ejected.

Pull out the corresponding rear seat belt, and flip the seat backrest backward to retract the unlocking indicator, e.g., the rear seat backrest is fully unfolded and locked.

⚠ Warning!

Before using the rear seat, make sure that the rear seat backrest is locked in place.

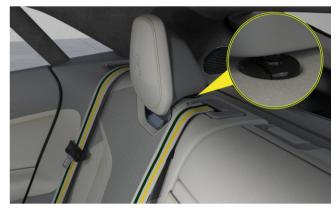
! Caution!

Before folding the rear seat backrest, clear the seat, unfasten the seat belt and retract the central armrest, otherwise the seat may be damaged.

① Note!

Lower the rear seat headrest to the lowest level and adjust the front seat backrest forward appropriately, otherwise the rear seat backrest may not be fully folded.

Rear adjustable headrest



Rear adjustable headrest button

The rear passengers can manually adjust the height of the rear seat headrest according to their height until their heads can rest completely against the headrest:

- Pull upward to adjust the rear seat headrest upward.
- Press and hold the rear seat headrest button to adjust the rear seat headrest downward.

⚠ Warning!

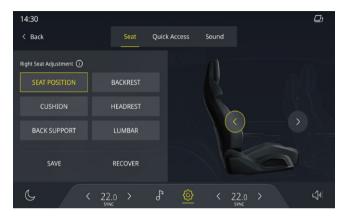
 After adjusting the headrest, please pull it up or press it down to ensure that the headrest is locked in place. All occupants, including the driver, must adjust the headrest to the proper position before operating the vehicle or sitting in the vehicle's seat to minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash.

Front passenger seat adjustment



You can tap the 9 icon on rear display and select **Seat** to access the seat settings interface, where the position of front passenger seat can be adjusted by tapping the **FRONT PASSENGER**.

Rear seat memory*



Click the icon on rear display and select **Seat** to access the seat settings interface, where the position of rear seat can be adjusted as required. Click **SAVE** to store the current seat position.

Click **RECOVER** to return to the saved memory position.

⚠ Warning!

Do not activate rear and front seat memory function during driving.

Caution!

Do not obstruct the automatic adjustment of the seat, otherwise the seat may be damaged.

① Note!

During the automatic adjustment of the seat, if the seat position is manually adjusted, the automatic adjustment of seat will be stopped.

Removal of rear seat headrest

- Fold the rear seat backrest to a certain angle and press and hold the buttons on the inside and outside of the headrest at the same time.
- 2. Pull the headrest upwards.

⚠ Warning!

- Never drive the vehicle with the headrest of the occupied rear seat removed, as this may increase the risk of neck injury in the event of a collision.
- Store the removed rear seat headrest properly, otherwise the moving headrest may cause injury in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

Installation of rear seat headrest

 Fold the backrest of the rear seats to a convenient installation angle.

- Align the headrest rod with the mounting hole on the seat backrest.
- Press and hold the corresponding headrest button and press the headrest down.
- 4. Deploy and lock the rear seat backrest.
- Adjust the height of the headrest according to your height and make sure that the headrest is fully locked.

Seat massage*

Front seat massage



You can tap on the central screen display's air conditioning control interface **Massage** to switch to the front seat massage settings

interface, and select different massage modes and intensities as needed

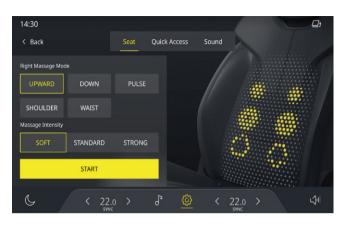
① Note!

- The factory default mode is UPWARD mode, and the factory default strength is SOFT.
- Operating the lumbar support during the massage process will cause the seat massage to stop. After the lumbar support is adjusted, the seat massage will continue.
- Long term and frequent use of the seat massage function may cause the seat massage to enter overheating protection. After cooling for a period of time, the seat massage function will return to normal.
- During the massage process, if the driver or passengers forcefully push against the backrest, it may cause the seat massage to enter overpressure protection. Restarting the seat massage will restore the seat massage function to normal.

Rear seat massage



You can tap the [©] icon on the rear seat display, select **Seat** and tap the corresponding side seat massage to switch to the rear seat massage setting interface.



Choose different massage modes and massage intensity according to your needs.

Seat heating

Front seat heating

You can adjust the seat heating by doing the following:

■ Tap the **Front** in the A/C control surface of CSD to switch to the front A/C control interface, and tap the seat heating icon

**D* to turn on seat heating. The seat heating, if being turned on, defaults to level 3, at which the maximum power and the fastest heating can be provided. And the minimum power and the slowest heating can be obtained at level 1.

Tap the seat heating icon again to lower the level further until the heating function close.

- The front seat heating can be turned on/off or the front seat heating level can be adjusted via intelligent voice.
- Switch to the A/C setting interface through the Climate on the mobile APP interface, and tap on the corresponding seat to display the seat working mode. The adjustment method via mobile APP is the same as that via CSD.



⚠ Warning!

If you or the occupants in the vehicle cannot feel the temperature of the seat or the parts of the body that come into contact with the seat cannot perceive pain, do not use the seat heating function, otherwise it may cause personal injury. Including but not limited to the following groups:

- Infants, children, the elderly, people with disabilities or patients.
- People with sensitive skin or those whose skin is prone to burns.
- Exhausted occupants.
- Drunken occupants.
- People who are taking medicines that can make them feel sleepy or other unwell (e.g., sleeping pills, cold medicine).
- Other occupants who are unable to feel seat temperature or have no sense of pain.

① Note!

- Low SOC of the high voltage battery will disable the seat heating function.
- If the heating function fails, the seat heating icon in the CSD will turn to grey. In this case, please contact Lotus retailer in time.
- When the vehicle is restarted, if the difference between the ambient temperature and the temperature recorded at the previous stop is small, the seat heating function will automatically be turned on according to the previous level.

Seat heating settings



Tap the **Settings** in the A/C control interface on the CSD to switch to the front seat heating setting interface.

Seat heating time is available from 5 minutes, 15 minutes, 30 minutes and always (The default is 15 minutes).

Rear seat heating*

Tap the **Rear** in the A/C control interface of the CSD to switch to the rear A/C control interface. For the activation of rear seat heating function, refer to **Front seat heating** (p.150).

The rear seat heating can also be controlled separately in the A/C control interface of rear display.

Seat ventilation*

■ Tap the **Front** in the A/C control interface of CSD to switch to the front A/C control interface, and then tap the seat ventilation icon

Description to turn on the seat ventilation function. The seat ventilation, if being turned on, defaults to level 3, at which the maximum power and the fastest cooling can be provided. And the minimum power and the slowest cooling can be obtained at level 1.

Tap the seat ventilation icon № again to decrease the level further until the ventilation turns.

- The front seat ventilation can be tuned on/off or the front seat ventilation level can be adjusted via the intelligent voice.
- Switch to the A/C setting interface through the Climate on the mobile APP interface, and tap on the corresponding seat to display the seat working mode. The adjustment method via mobile APP is the same as that via CSD.



① Note!

- Low level of high voltage battery may cause the seat ventilation function failure to be activated. In this case, the CSD will display corresponding text prompt.
- If the ventilation function fails, the seat ventilation icon will turn to grey. At this time, please contact Lotus retailer in time.

Seat ventilation settings



Tap the **Settings** in the A/C control interface on the CSD to switch to the front seat ventilation setting interface.

The seat ventilation time is available from 5 minutes, 15 minutes, 30 minutes without restrictions (The default is 15 minutes).

Rear seat ventilation

Tap the **Rear** in the A/C control interface of the CSD to switch to the rear A/C control interface. For the activation of rear seat ventilation function, refer to **Front seat ventilation** (p.152).

The rear seat ventilation can also be controlled separately in the A/C control interface of rear display.

Air conditioner

Four-zone air-conditioner control system

Tap the temperature value on CSD to enter the A/C control interface.

The automatic four-zone A/C system is automatically controlled according to the pre-set temperature in the vehicle, and the temperature, air volume and air direction of the left front, right front, left rear and right rear climate areas in the vehicle can be adjusted separately according to the ambient temperature, interior temperature, sunshine, air quality and window fog.

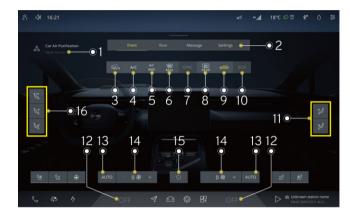
When setting the climate of individual zone manually, the climate of other zones can still be kept in auto mode.

① Note!

- You can switch between the front and rear A/C control panels on the CSD to control the four-zone A/C system.
- When the vehicle's battery level is below 5% and a low-power charging station is used for charging, the air conditioning will temporarily become unusable.
- It is recommended that you regularly send your vehicle to the Lotus Customer Care Centre for inspection or replacement of the A/C refrigerant. If you have any problems with the A/C

system during this period, please contact the Lotus retailer in time

Front A/C control interface



- 1. ION (negative oxygen ion) switch
- 2. Top control bar
- 3. Outside streaming mirror defrosting/defogging switch*
- 4. A/C switch
- A/C MAX switch
- 6. Front windscreen defrosting/defogging switch
- 7. Four-zone sync switch
- 8. Rear windscreen defrosting/defogging switch

- 9. Internal and external circulation switch
- 10. ECO switch
- 11. Front passenger side air outlet mode
- 12. Driver/front passenger side temperature adjustment switch
- 13. Driver/passenger side automatic A/C switch
- 14. Driver/front passenger side air volume setting switch
- 15. Front A/C system switch
- 16. Driver side air outlet mode



ION switch: tap to turn on or off the ION function of the A/C.



Outside streaming mirror defrosting/defogging switch: tap to turn on or off the defrosting/defogging function of outside streaming mirror.



A/C switch: tap to turn on or off the A/C refrigeration system. In auto mode, the A/C mode is turned on by default.





A/C MAX switch: after this switch is turned on by clicking, the air conditioning temperature will automatically adjust to the lowest and the air volume will be adjusted to the maximum.

Front windscreen defrost/defog switch: tap on or off the maximum defrost/defogging function to quickly remove ice or fog from the front windscreen and side windows.



Four-zone sync switch: after the four-zone sync is activated by tapping, the temperature, air volume, blowing mode and auto mode in the vehicle can be adjusted synchronously from the driver side. after this feature is deactivated, each area can be can be adjusted separately. When the rear A/C is turned off, the driver's side can only synchronously adjust the passenger area. The on/off status of this function will be memorized, and every time the vehicle is started, this function will return to the state before the vehicle is powered off.



Rear windscreen defrosting/defogging switch: tap to turn on or off the defrosting/defogging function of rear windscreen.



Internal circulation switch: tap to turn on the internal circulation of air in the vehicle



External circulation switch: tap to turn on the external circulation of air in the vehicle.



Automatic circulation mode: when the A/C is turned to Auto mode, the internal/external circulation will be automatically activated.



ECO switch: tap to turn on or off the economic operation mode of the A/C.



Window blowing mode: air flow blows to front windscreen and front side windows.



Face blowing mode: air flow blows out from the centre and side air outlets, blowing the side faces of the driver and front passenger.



Foot blowing mode: air flow blows to the driver and front passenger feet.



Air volume control switch: tap "-" or "+" switch on both sides of the fan to adjust the air volume at the corresponding side respectively. Every time you tap the switch, the air volume will be turned up or down by 1 level. The higher the value, the greater the air volume.



Air volume auto mode: if this mode is activated, in the case of constant air volume level, automatically adjust the air volume that can be felt.



Front A/C system switch: tap to turn the front A/C system on or off.

⚠ Warning!

 Before driving, make sure that all windows are free of ice, snow or fog, otherwise your vision will be obstructed, thus resulting in a traffic accident. Do not turn on the internal circulation function for a long time, which may cause the air in the vehicle to be not fresh and the windows to fog.

① Note!

- Turning off the A/C switch is not turning off the A/C system.
 The heater system may still be working.
- When you turn on the air conditioning system for the first time in a very humid environment, it is normal for the windscreen to produce slight fog.
- If the air conditioning system operates with excessive noise, you can manually lower the air volume level.
- The air conditioning compressor not only provides cooling for the car, but also cools the battery. Therefore, in hot weather, even if the air conditioning is turned off, the compressor may still be working, which is a normal. This is to maintain the battery in an optimal temperature range to ensure longer service life and optimal performance.
- During operation or when the air conditioning system is turned off, there may be a slight sound similar to running water or purring, which is a normal phenomenon when the refrigerant is working normally in the air conditioning system.
- To ensure the efficiency of the temperature control system, please close all windows and ensure that the external grille in

- front of the windscreen is free of ice, snow, leaves, and other debris
- After the four zone sync switch is turned on, you turn off the front and rear A/C systems simultaneously by tapping the front A/C system switch, adjusting the driver side air volume to level 0, or pressing the driver side temperature adjustment switch.
- When you feel that the air inside the vehicle is muddy and dull, you can turn on the external circulation function to introduce the outside air into the vehicle to keep the air in the vehicle fresh.
- In auto mode, the air volume can be selected from 3 levels. In non auto mode, the air volume can be selected from 7 levels.
- When the air conditioning system is turned on while parked, it is normal for a small pool of water to form below the vehicle, which is excess water discharged during the dehumidification process.
- When locking the car and leaving, if it is found that the air conditioning blower inside the cab is still working, it is normal for the air conditioning system to operate its self drying function to minimize the accumulation of moisture or mold inside the air conditioning system.

A/C control panel of front tunnel console



- 1. Driver side temperature/air volume adjustment switch
- 2. Passenger side temperature/air volume adjustment switch

Short press the temperature adjustment switch on the driver's or passenger's side to turn on/off the corresponding area air conditioning system in the front row and enter the air conditioning control interface. In the air conditioning settings interface, you can customize the air conditioning lever adjustment function to temperature or air volume in the settings options.



When selecting **TEMPERATURE**, turn the temperature/air volume adjustment switch on the driver's or passenger's side up or down to adjust the corresponding side air conditioning temperature.

When selecting **AIR VOLUME**, turn the temperature/air volume adjustment switch on the driver's or passenger's side up or down to adjust the air volume of the corresponding side air conditioner.

① Note!

- Pull up or down and hold to quickly adjust the A/C temperature or air volume.
- Even if the high voltage battery is low, the use of the A/C will not be restricted. Please note whether the high voltage battery meets the driving requirements.

Auto mode

The four climate zones in the vehicle can be switched individually to auto mode. You can switch the auto mode on/off by doing the following:

- Press the AUTO switch in the A/C control panel of the front tunnel console to turn on/off the auto mode of the four climate zones.
- Tap the AUTO switch for individual climate zone on the front or rear A/C control panel to enable/disable the AUTO mode of corresponding climate zone.



Auto mode: after the auto mode is turned on by tapping, the A/C system will automatically control the temperature, air volume and flow direction according to the temperature you set in the vehicle, so as to maintain the temperature in the vehicle at the value you set.

The auto mode will be deactivated when any of the following occurs:

- Enable the maximum defrosting function.
- Adjust the blowing mode.
- Turn on A/C MAX.
- Turn off the AUTO mode.

Temperature adjustment

The four climate zones in the vehicle can be individually adjusted for temperature. When the front or rear A/C system is turned on, you can tap the TEMP value and drag it left and right on the front or rear A/C control interface to quickly select the expected temperature value, or you can tap \checkmark or \gt on both sides of the TEMP value to adjust the temperature.

Rear A/C control interface of CSD



- 1. Top control bar
- 2. Rear left/right air outlet mode
- 3. Rear left/right temperature adjustment switch
- 4. Rear left/right automatic A/C switch

- 5. Rear left/right air volume setting switch
- 6. Rear A/C system switch

The activation/deactivation of rear A/C control interface on the CSD can be found in the **Front A/C control interface** (p.154).

Rear A/C control interface

The rear A/C control panel is arranged below the rear air vent on the tunnel console. There is a rear A/C control panel on the centre armrest of the rear seat for some models.



- 1. Rear seat setting switch
- 2. Rear left/right air outlet mode
- 3. Rear left/right temperature adjustment switch

- 4. Rear left/right automatic A/C switch
- 5. Rear left/right air volume setting switch
- 6. Rear A/C system switch



Rear seat setting switch: tap to enter the rear seat setting interface.



Face blowing mode: air flow blows out from the centre and side air outlets, blowing the side faces of the driver and front passenger.



Foot blowing mode: air flow blows towards the feet of rear passengers.



Auto mode: after the auto mode is turned on by tapping, the A/C system will automatically control the temperature, air volume and flow direction according to the temperature you set in the vehicle, so as to maintain the temperature in the vehicle at the value you set.



Air volume control switch: tap "-" or "+" switch on both sides of the fan to adjust the air volume at the corresponding side respectively. Every time you tap the switch, the air volume will be turned up or down by 1 level. The higher the value, the greater the air volume.



Rear A/C system switch: tap to turn the rear A/C system on or off.

Remote control of A/C



You can remotely turn on or off the A/C by:

- Tapping the remote A/C switch on mobile APP.
- Tapping the **Climate**, on the mobile APP interface to switch to the A/C settings interface, and tapping the ⁽⁾ icon to turn on or off the A/C.
- Tapping the Climate, on the mobile APP interface to switch to the A/C setting interface, and then tapping HI or LO to adjust the temperature directly to the highest or lowest with the A/C on.

After the A/C is turned on, you can drag the slider to any position of the temperature adjustment slider to set the temperature in the vehicle.

There are 12 time can be selected for the remote control of the A/C on mobile APP (minimum 5 minutes, maximum 60 minutes). If you need to run the A/C for a longer time, you must remotely turn on the A/C system again.

If the air inside the vehicle is turbid, you can also tap the **Ventilation** switch before getting on to remotely activate the cabin cleaning function, and allow the air outside the vehicle entering the vehicle for a period of time to remove odours and keep the air inside the vehicle fresh. In hot weather, it can also play a certain cooling effect.

① Note!

- The remote control of A/C with mobile APP only supports setting the temperature in the complete vehicle other than in individual zones.
- Any operation on mobile APP to control the A/C remotely will stop immediately after the driver unlocks the vehicle.

A/C settings



• Air quality

The air quality detection system can detect the CO₂ concentration, humidity and PM 2.5 in the air inside the vehicle respectively, and

display the service life of the pollen filter, reminding you to timely maintain and service to improve the air purification function.

If your vehicle is equipped with ION (negative oxygen ion) function, you can click the ION switch on the front A/C control panel to turn on, so that small charged particles of PM 2.5 level can be adsorbed to each other into larger particles and then filtered by the pollen filter to improve the air cleanliness.

① Note!

- After the ION air purifier is turned on, it is recommended that you close the windows.
- When the service life of the pollen filter is less than 20%, please go to the Lotus retailer to replace it in time.
- Reuse of the pollen filter may lead to a decrease in the air quality in the car, make sure that the pollen filter has been replaced before resetting the service life of the pollen filter.
- Cabin overheating protection

Tap the **Settings** switch in the A/C control interface to enter the A/C setting interface, where you can choose to turn on or off the cabin overheating protection function.

The temperature control system can reduce the interior temperature in the event of extremely high ambient temperatures. With this function enabled, the A/C system may start cooling once the temperature in the vehicle is detected to exceed 40°C.

After you leave and lock the vehicle, this feature will automatically turn off after about 24 hours, but the function switch will remain on until you manually turn it off.

⚠ Warning!

Never leave children, helpless adults, people with disabilities, animals unattended in the car. Under extreme external conditions, the interior of the car may become dangerously hot even if the cabin overheat protection function is activated.

① Note!

When the high voltage battery SOC is below 20%, the cabin overheating protection function cannot be activated or stopped.

When it is detected that the front windscreen may be foggy, or the CO_2 concentration, humidity and PM2.5 concentration in the vehicle air is abnormal, a pop-up window will be triggered to remind you to turn on the automatic A/C. You can choose to **OPEN NOW** or **CANCEL** . If the reminder is not responded to for a period of time, the A/C will automatically be turned on.



① Note!

Turn off all automatic functions in the A/C settings interface to prevent the A/C from being automatically turned on.

Air quality system (AQS)

The AQS consists of a pollen filter and an air quality sensor.

The multiple filters can filter out smoke and solid particles from the air entering the vehicle, and remove odour and pollutants to maintain a healthy and fresh environment in the vehicle. The air quality sensor can monitor the content of pollutants in the air outside the vehicle. When the pollutant content reaches a certain level, the air inlet will be closed, and the air in the car will begin to circulate internally to avoid being polluted by the outside air.

Air inlet



There may be leaves and insects built up at the A/C exterior vents in the grille under the rear of the bonnet, so please clean up them regularly to avoid blockages.

Air outlet

Overview of front outlet



Front outlet

- 1. Front side air outlet
- 2. Side defrost air outlet
- 3. Front windscreen defrost air outlet
- 4. Front feet air outlet
- 5. Middle air outlet

Overview of rear outlet



- 1. Rear side air outlet
- 2. Rear feet air outlet
- 3. Rear air outlet of tunnel console

Overview of rear outlet*



- 1. Rear side air outlet
- 2. Rear feet air outlet
- 3. Rear air outlet of tunnel console

A/C air outlet adjustment

There are 4 electric air outlets of A/C in the front and 2 in the rear, and a manual air outlet at each side of the B-pillar. All air outlets can be adjusted separately.



On the A/C control interface, double-tap to turn on the corresponding air flow, and double-tap again to turn it off. Tap and drag the air flow to adjust the air flow direction.

When the air outlet is fully closed, double clicking on the corresponding side airflow will automatically activate the blowing mode while opening the corresponding air outlet.

When the vehicle is powered off or the air conditioning is turned off, the status of the air outlet will be remembered. After the vehicle is started and the air conditioning is turned on, the air outlet will be opened in the same state as the last time the air conditioning was used.



Rear side air outlet

For the air outlets on the interior panels on both sides of the Bpillar, the air flow direction can be adjusted through the blades at the air outlets.

Panoramic sunroof*

Central screen display adjustment panoramic sunroof



You can tap on the \bigcirc icon in the central screen display, and then select the **Panoramic sunroof** icon to switch to the transparency adjustment interface.



- . CLEAR
- 2. MATT
- 3. Local regulation area

You can adjust the panoramic sunroof on the CSD:

- You can tap CLEAR or MATT to achieve overall transparency or atomization of the panoramic sky curtain.
- You can also manually select the area you need to atomize in the local adjustment area to achieve the atomization effect in the local position.

Rear seat display adjustment panoramic sunroof



You can adjust the panoramic canopy through the quick access interface of the rear seat display in the following ways:

- You can tap CLEAR or MATT to achieve overall transparency or atomization of the panoramic sky curtain.
- You can switch the transparency state by sliding or tapping on the 10 independent areas of the panoramic sunroof schematic on the rear seat display.

Intelligent voice transparency adjustment

You can adjust the roof glass transparency by intelligent voice.

After intelligent voice adjustment of the roof glass transparency to the maximum or minimum gear, it will be reminded by voice.

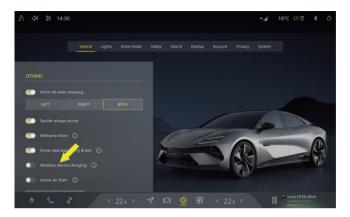
Wireless device charging



Wireless charging induction area

When charging, please place the mobile phone face up within the wireless charging induction area.

You can activate the wireless device charging function of your phone in the following ways:



 Tap the @ icon in the CSD to enable or disable the wireless charging function of mobile phones in the Vehicle function setting interface.



■ Click on the csp, and click **Wireless Charging** to turn this function on or off.

⚠ Warning!

- Drivers should not set up wireless charging while driving.
- Do not place objects containing metal components in the wireless charging induction area together with the mobile phone, otherwise the objects containing metal components may be heated or damaged, causing a safety accident.
- Do not put the unattended mobile phone in the vehicle for charging, so as to avoid the safety risk.

Caution!

- Drivers should not set up wireless charging while driving.
- Do not place objects containing metal components in the wireless charging induction area together with the mobile phone, otherwise the objects containing metal components may be heated or damaged, causing a safety accident.
- Do not put the unattended mobile phone in the vehicle for charging, so as to avoid the safety risk.

① Note!

- When the mobile phone is hot, the vehicle may stop charging to protect the battery of the mobile phone and the charging will not be resumed until the mobile phone cools down.
- It is normal for the mobile phone to experience an increase in temperature during charging.
- If you use the card key to start the vehicle, do not remove the card key to charge the mobile phone until the vehicle enters the READY state. If the wireless charging function is activated with the card key not removed, a reminder will appear on the CSD.
- The wireless charging function only supports mobile phones, earphones, stereos and other devices that meet the wireless charging protocol.
- Wireless charging supports up to 50W charging.

- When using wireless charging function, please place the device in the center of the charging area to avoid causing the device to be unable to charge or have low charging efficiency.
- Only 1 mobile phone can be charged at a time.
- If the phone case is made of special material (such as a phone case with a metal bracket/metal magnet) or is too thick, it may cause charging failure.
- When driving on a bumpy road, the wireless charging of the mobile phone may be intermittently stopped.
- If the mobile phone cannot be charged properly, always make sure that the mobile phone is placed in the wireless charging area without foreign objects, or wait for the wireless charging induction area to cool down before another try. If it is still impossible to charge, please contact Lotus retailer in time.
- When the vehicle is in P gear, pressing the brake pedal will trigger the function of detecting valid keys in the car, which will interrupt the wireless charging function of the phone; Opening the car door will trigger a valid key forget reminder, which will also interrupt the wireless charging function of the phone.

Car power

12V power supply

There are 12V power supplies in the front armrest box and the boot respectively, which support a maximum power of 180W to charge the electronic equipment.



12V power supply in front armrest box

To use the 12V power supply in the front armrest box, please flip the protective cover to the right.



12V power supply in boot

To use the 12V power supply in the boot, please push the protective cover down and backward.

⚠ Warning!

- Do not insert your fingers or conductive objects (such as pens) into the socket.
- Close the protective cover after use of the 12V power supply.
 Never allow water or any other liquid to come into contact with the socket.
- Connected devices may get hot during charging. Make sure that the hot devices will not endanger personnel safety or cause property damages.

Caution!

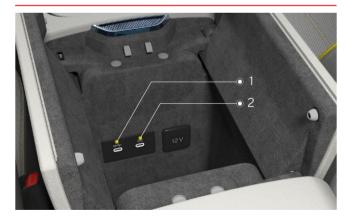
- Do not use electrical accessories with ratings greater than 12V or 180W, as this may cause the system to malfunction.
- Do not use equipment that may interfere with the radio receiver or electrical system of the vehicle.

USB-C port

Front USB-C port

⚠ Warning!

Do not to connect cord to USB-C port while driving.



- 1. Data transmission interface (DTI)
- 2. Charging port

Caution!

Do not connect external devices that are not suitable for this vehicle to the USB-C interface in the central armrest box, as this may cause the vehicle's electronic devices to malfunction.

Two USB-C ports are provided in front armrest box. Data transmission interface supports data transmission between terminal products such as mobile phones, USB-C flash drives, tablets and the IHU, and can also be used to charge the terminal products. Charging port can be used for charging terminal products such as mobile phones, tablets, laptops.



Extendible location

After the armrest box is closed, the charging cable or data cable can extend from the location as shown.

Rear USB-C port



Rear USB-C port

There are two USB-C ports in the lower centre of the rear seat cushion, which can be used by passengers for charging.

Rear USB-C port*



Rear USB-C port

There are two USB-C ports in the rear centre armrest box, which can be used by passengers for charging.



Sun visor

Rational use of sun visor can effectively block sunlight and avoid sun glare.



Sun visor

Flip down the sun visor to open it and adjust the angle as needed to block the sun.



Flip the sun visor to the side

You can flip the sun visor to the side if sunlight enters the vehicle from side windows.

Vanity mirror

The vanity mirror is installed on the inner side of the sun visor. Flip down the sun visor and flip up the vanity mirror cover to use the mirror, and the vanity mirror light will be illuminated automatically.



Open the vanity mirror cover

⚠ Warning!

Do not uncover the vanity mirror while driving, otherwise the light reflected from it may blind you and others.

Storage device

⚠ Warning!

If objects within the vehicle are not stored correctly, they may become projectiles, potentially hitting occupants within the vehicle. Cup holders and open storage spaces may not always keep all items in place. There is a risk of injury in cases of sudden braking or change the direction particularly in the event of an accident.

- Close the lockable storage spaces before driving.
- Always store objects so that they are secure.
- Always store and secure hard, heavy, sharp-edged, fragile or bulky objects in the trunk.
- Close the container when using the cup holders, particularly if the liquid is hot.

① Note!

The trunk floor may be damaged by an unevenly distributed load or an abrupt application of load.

- Distribute the load evenly.
- Drive carefully when the vehicle is fully laden. Avoid abrupt starts, braking and steering as well as rapid cornering.

Front storage device



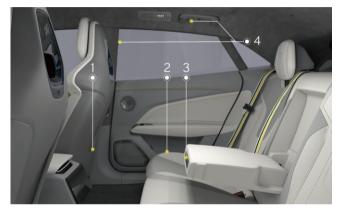
Front storage device

- 1. Tunnel console lower pocket
- 2. Glove box
- 3. Front liftable cup holder
- 4. Front door pocket
- 5. Front centre armrest box

⚠ Warning!

If your vehicle has storage space under the front dashboard, please do not place items that cannot be placed smoothly, such as water cups, circular or cylindrical objects. Otherwise, in the event of an emergency braking or collision accident, it may cause personal injury or damage to objects due to collision within the vehicle.

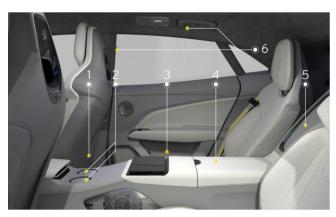
Rear storage device



Rear storage device

- 1. Backrest pocket
- 2. Rear door pocket
- 3. Rear centre armrest cup holder
- 4. Coat hook

Rear storage device*



Rear storage device

- 1. Backrest pocket
- 2. Rear liftable cup holder
- 3. Rear door pocket
- 4. Rear centre armrest box
- 5. Rear seat backrest pocket
- 6. Coat hook

⚠ Warning!

Small items should be stored in the glove box or other storage devices to ensure that they are fixed in place. Otherwise, they may

cause harm to the occupants in the vehicle during a sudden braking or an accident.

Coat hook



Coat hook

Coat hooks are installed above both rear side B-pillars and doors for passengers to hang clothes or hats.

⚠ Warning!

Do not hang sharp or excessively hard objects to avoid personal injury.

① Note!

Do not hang heavy objects on the coat hooks to avoid damaging them.

Front cup holder



Front liftable cup holder

There is a front liftable cup holder at the tunnel console. To use the cup holder, press it until its bottom is locked, and then place the cup on the cup holder. You can also place the cup on the cup holder and press the cup to allow the holder to move to the bottom and to get locked.

① Note!

Pressing the cup to move the cup holder to the bottom and lock it. The cup made of soft materials (such as paper cups, soft plastic cups) should not be used.



Cup holder unlock switch

Take out the cup and press the unlock switch to make the cup holder automatically rise to the initial position.

⚠ Warning!

 Do not put hot drinks in the cup holder that is not tightly covered. Otherwise, they may spill when the vehicle bumps, causing personal injury or damage to vehicle components.

- After pressing the unlock switch, retract your hand in time to avoid pinch injuries during the automatic ascent of the cup holder.
- The cup holder claw satisfies the normal use of the cup. Please do not use your fingers or sharp objects to collide with the cup holder claw or other unconventional operations.

Caution!

- Do not forcibly put an inappropriate container into the cup holder, otherwise, the container or vehicle may be damaged.
- When using the cup holder, you should pay attention not to allow tiny items and other debris falling into the cup holder. Otherwise, the cup holder may get stuck when lifting and lowering, affecting the use.

① Note!

In extremely low temperature environment, the automatic rise of cup holder is slow or even it may fail to rise.

Rear cup holders



Rear cup holder closing

Press the front end of the cup holder to make the cup holder automatically pop up.



Rear cup holder opening

When the rear cup holder is not in use, push the cup holder back and lock it.

⚠ Warning!

Do not put hot drinks in the cup holder that are not tightly covered to prevent scalding during the moving of the vehicle.

L Caution!

Do not forcibly put an inappropriate container into the cup holder, otherwise the container or vehicle may be damaged.

① Note!

It is normal for the cup holder to pop out slowly or even unable at low temperature.

Opening/closing of glove box



Glove box switch

Press the glove box unlock switch $\@mdextchick{ riangle}{\@mdextchick{ riangle}{\@mdextch$



Glove box

Push the glove box back to lock it properly, and the glove box indicator will go out automatically.

⚠ Warning!

When driving, be sure to keep the glove box closed. Otherwise, sudden braking or collision may cause injury to passengers inside the car.

① Note!

If the glove box cannot be opened due to low power of the vehicle, please contact Lotus retailer. In the low temperature environment, it is normal for the glove box to open slowly.

Rear seat backrest pocket*



The rear seat backrest pocket is located in the centre of the rear seat backrest, and it can be locked should it be pushed down to the bottom and will close automatically should it be pressed again.

① Note!

In extremely low temperature environment, the automatic rise of rear seat backrest is slow or even it may fail to rise.

Pocket under boot floor



Pocket under boot floor

A boot storage box is provided under the boot floor, which can be used to store driver's tools.

Press the flip handle and pull up the rear section of the cover to open the boot floor.

⚠ Warning!

After lifting the trunk floor handle, retract your hand in time to avoid pinch injuries during the automatic closing of the handle.

① Note!

- Do not let the cover fall on its own when closing, and always use your hand to hold it and close slowly.
- When you need to remove the boot floor as a whole, you can press the flip handle to tilt the floor at a certain angle, and then use both hands to grip the left and right edges of the floor and pull it outward. Do not pull the flip bracelet outward alone to avoid damage to the flip bracelet.

Boot load

There are hooks on the boot floor that are used to hold the luggage in place. Before using the boot hook, flip the hook from the floor.



Boot load

⚠ Warning!

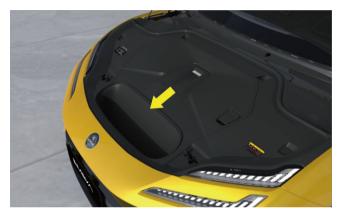
- It is strictly forbidden to use inferior or damaged binding strap, otherwise it may break in the event of emergency braking or accident, causing personal injury due to the luggage in the boot being thrown.
- It is forbidden to use the hook to secure child safety seats.

L Caution!

When using the boot hook, ensure not to exceed the maximum pulling force of the hook.

Bonnet storage box

A bonnet storage box is provided in the bonnet.



Bonnet storage box

Centre armrest

Front centre armrest

Front centre armrest



Opening/closing of front centre armrest box

The front centre armrest is equipped with a storage box, and it can be opened by pressing the front centre armrest box switch.

Push and close the front centre armrest box cover in the opposite direction of opening.

⚠ Warning!

Always keep the front centre armrest box closed in the process of driving, otherwise it may cause an accident and personal injury.

① Note!

In the low temperature environment, it is normal for the front centre armrest box cover to open slowly.

Rear centre armrest

Rear centre armrest



Rear centre armrest

A centre armrest is installed in the middle of rear seat backrest, which can be turned down and pulled out to the limit position for use, and turned up and pressed back into the backrest for closing.

Rear centre armrest*



Opening/closing of rear centre armrest box

The rear centre armrest is provided with a storage box and it can be opened by pressing the switch.

Flip the rear centre armrest in the opposite direction to close the armrest box.

① Note!

In low temperature environment, it is normal for the rear centre armrest box cover to open slowly.

Towing mode*

Using of electric towing hook

This vehicle is allowed to tow a trailer. Before you decide to tow a trailer, you should first check the relevant local regulations on motor vehicles. As the regulations in different regions are different, you need to select a trailer of the appropriate size and consult Lotus retailer before towing.



Electric towing hook switch

- Open the tailgate, press the electric towing hook switch in the boot until you hear the sound of the motor, and the electric towing hook will be extended automatically.
- After the electric towing hook is extended out, couple the trailer with the towing hook and open the protective cover of the towing hook to connect the electric connector.



Electric towing hook

The electric connector equipped with this vehicle adopts a 13-core coil, and the standard used for the power outlet is ISO 11446:2004. The specific pin functions are as follows:

Pin No.	Colour	Function
1	Yellow line	Left direction indicator lamp
2	Blue line	Rear fog lamp
3	White line	General grounding line

Pin No.	Colour	Function	
4	Green line	Right direction indicator lamp	
5	Brown line	Right running lamp	
6	Red line	Brake lamp	
7	Black line	Left running lamp	
8	Pink line	Reversing lamp	
9	Orange line	To battery	
10	Grey line	Switch power (for refrigerator)	
11	Black and white line	10-pin grounding line	
12	Blue and white line	Towing inspection	
13	Red and white line	9-pin grounding line	

⚠ Warning!

When this function is enabled, the electric towing hook will extend from the lower middle of the rear bumper, and at this time, you should pay attention to the area in the vicinity of the place where the electric towing hook extends to prevent the electric towing hook from hitting people or objects when it extends.

- Always ensure a smooth start, and avoid sudden acceleration or braking on slippery roads, to prevent losing control of the vehicle due to slipping.
- Crosswinds and rough roads may cause the vehicle to swing, seriously affecting the handling of the vehicle. If you notice slight signs of the vehicle swinging in any case, be sure to hold the steering wheel with both hands and slow down.
- When a trailer is towed, the braking distance will be increased.
 Therefore, the distance from the vehicle ahead should be increased.
- When overtaking with a trailer towed, it needs to maintain a longer distance from the vehicle to be overtaken before returning to the original lane.
- When towing a trailer, make sure to turn smoothly, try to avoid bumping or sudden operation of the steering wheel, and switch on the direction indicator lamps earlier.
- When towing a trailer on a steep or long slope, you should slow down in advance. Control the driving speed according to the mass of the towed trailer and the gradient of the road.

 Try to avoid parking on a slope. If unavoidable, the wedge blocks should be placed under the tyres of the towing vehicle and the towed trailer, and the parking brake should be applied.

Caution!

- Frequent operation of the electric towing hook will cause the motor to overheat and be damaged. Thus, when used under normal temperature, the electric towing hook shall unfold or retract at an interval. Under too low or too high temperatures, it is recommended to extend the time interval.
- Before driving, please ensure that the tyre pressure, lights and connections of the towing vehicle and the towed trailer are normal.
- When towing a trailer, please abide by the relevant local laws and regulations, and modification without permission is strictly forbidden.
- Always ensure that the goods are securely fixed on the towed trailer, and the towed trailer is kept level.
- Do not tow a trailer during the running-in period of a new car.
- Ensure that the electric towing hook is stowed when not in use.

① Note!

After connecting the trailer cable, the vehicle will perform a trailer light detection to ensure that the trailer lights are synchronized with

the vehicle lights. If the detection is not successful, please confirm whether the trailer lights are normal.

Additional mirrors and brackets

The outside wing mirrors of the towing vehicle shall meet the legal requirements. If not, please install suitable additional mirrors.

- Type 1: pasted on the surface of the outside wing mirror;
- Type 2: a bracket is mounted on the frame to clamp.

Technical parameters

The towing capacity of the vehicle will depend on the vehicle specifications, load, road conditions and the specifications of the towed vehicle, etc. Please refer to the table below for specific parameters.

Item			Parameter s
Maximum allowable towing mass (with braking)	Front drive motor model: TZ230XS225 Rear drive motor model: TZ230XS225	R20 rim	2,250
		R21 rim	2,250
		R22 rim	1,225
	Front drive motor model: TZ230XS225	R21 rim	1,225

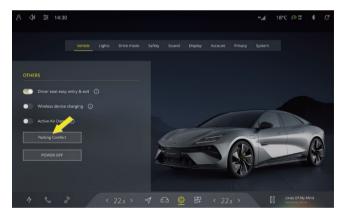
Item			Parameter s
	Rear drive motor model: TZ264XY000	R22 rim	1,225
	Static vertical vertical results for the state of the sta	R20 rim	90
		R21 rim	90
		R22 rim	49
head (kg)	Front drive motor model: TZ230XS225 Rear drive motor model: TZ264XY000	R21 rim	49
		R22 rim	49
Maximum allowable towing mass (without braking) (kg)			750
Dimensional limit of centre axle trailers that can be towed (length/width/height) (mm)			12,000/2,5 50/4,000
Traction device rear suspension (mm)			1187
Ball joint			Comply with ECE R55 A CLASS for ball joint size.

Parking comfort

When you park to rest, you can turn on the parking comfort function to provide you with a comfortable resting environment. After turning on the parking comfort function, the central display screen will continue to light up, and the air conditioning and multimedia functions can also be used normally.

To enable the parking comfort function, the following conditions must be met:

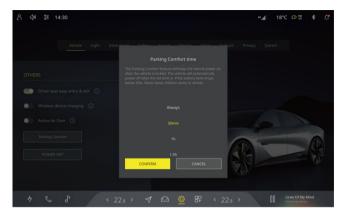
- The remaining power of the vehicle is greater than 20%.
- The vehicle power is on or the vehicle is in READY state.



Click on the @ icon in the CSD, turn on or off the parking comfort function in the **vehicle** function setting interface.



You can also add a parking comfort button in the shortcut panel. Click the parking comfort button to quickly turn on or off the parking comfort function.



You can set the usage time of the parking comfort function according to your own needs, and set the usage time between 30 minutes and 8 hours or at irregular intervals (always on). After setting, click **Confirm** to use the parking comfort function.

When the parking comfort function is turned on or off, a pop-up window will appear on the central display screen, and the left indicator light of the status bar 60 will turn on or off.

Caution!

During the use of the parking comfort function, when locking the vehicle inside or outside the car, the vehicle will only lock the door, but the anti-theft function will not be activated. Please do not leave the vehicle for a long time after locking to avoid unnecessary losses.

① Note!

- The parking comfort function can only be activated after the vehicle has completely stopped.
- Turn on the vehicle power, click Confirm to use the parking comfort function; when the vehicle is in the READY state, after clicking Confirm, you need to open the main driver's door, then close the main driver's door, and make the vehicle exit the READY state to use the parking comfort function.
- During the use of the parking comfort function, when you open the main driver's door, the central display screen will pop up corresponding information to remind you that the parking comfort function is in use; for every 10% decrease in the remaining battery power of the vehicle, the central display screen will pop up corresponding information to remind you to pay attention to the remaining battery power.
- During the use of the parking comfort function, if you leave and lock the vehicle, the parking comfort function will continue to work until the set time ends or the remaining battery of the vehicle is less than 20%
- The parking comfort function does not currently support remote viewing and control through a mobile app. It needs to be turned on and off on the vehicle.
- The parking comfort function is valid for a single setting.
 When the set usage time ends, the vehicle power is turned

off, or the driving is started, the parking comfort function will automatically exit. The next use requires a reset to enable it.

Exit Parking comfort

In the **Vehicle** function settings interface or shortcut panel, click **Parking comfort** again, and select **Cancel** to manually exit the parking comfort function.

During use, if the following situations occur, the parking comfort function will automatically exit:

- The set usage time timer has ended.
- The remaining power of the vehicle is less than 20%.
- The vehicle status is switched to READY state.



DRIVE

Before you drive

Driving requirements

Drivers must obtain a driving license before driving on the road.

⚠ Warning!

- Never drive under the influence of alcohol or drugs.
- Avoid fatigued driving.
- Never drive too fast. Be sure to comply with the speed limit regulations.
- The driver shall keep his/her hands on the steering wheel at all times during driving.
- All occupants are prohibited from extending their arms, heads or other body parts out of the vehicle during driving.
- Do not adjust the centre stack display, steering wheel, seat and inside/outside mirrors during driving, otherwise the car may get out of control.
- Be sure to install the floor mat correctly. Do not place objects in driver foot space. Otherwise, the pedal control will be affected during driving.
- The driver should not be distracted by occupants or use electronic devices while driving.

Correct driving posture

Whether the driver's sitting posture is correct directly affects the degree of driver fatigue and the driving safety.

In order to ensure driving safety, adjustments should be made as follows before driving:

- Sit upright with your feet on the floor.
- Adjust the driver seat back and forth to make it easier for the driver to effectively operate the accelerator pedal and the brake pedal.
- Adjust the height of the headrest correctly according to your body height.
- The seat backrest should be in the upright position and the driver's back should be completely attached to the back.
- Adjust the steering wheel so that it is no less than 25 cm from the chest.
- Wrap the middle part of the seat belt between the neck and shoulders. Wrap the lap portion of the seat belt tightly around the hip joint (not the abdomen).

⚠ Warning!

If you get too close to the steering wheel, the SRS may fail to provide proper protection for you, which otherwise will result in injury or life risk.

Wading

Before wading, pay attention to the following matters:

- Confirm the water depth before wading, and make sure the water level does not go above the lower edge of the vehicle body. When wading through water, please be aware of water waves caused by nearby vehicles, because this may make the water level go above the lower edge of the body.
- Always pass through flooded roads at a low speed, and do not stop or drive backward in water under any circumstances.

After wading, carry out inspections as follows immediately if the vehicle is safe:

- Gently depress the brake pedal to dry the brake and check whether the brake is working properly.
- Check that the horn is working properly.
- Turn the steering wheel to check whether the steering assist is working properly.
- Check whether the exterior lamps are working properly.

Caution!

The air suspension can adjust the height of the vehicle body, when you need to wade on the road, please check the water depth of the waterlogged section first, the water level must not be higher than the lower edge of the vehicle body. After wading, it is recommended that you contact the Lotus workshop for inspection and maintenance as soon as possible.

Drive

Power on/off

Power on

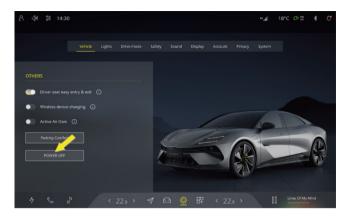
After the car is unlocked and the doors are opened via the effective key, the instrument cluster and the CSD will light up, and the car will be automatically powered on.

Power off

• Conventional power off

In the P gear, if you have closed all doors (including the bonnet and the tailgate) and are about to leave the vehicle with the valid key, you can power off the vehicle in the following ways:

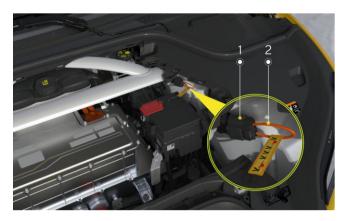
- Lock the car with the effective key.
- If the driver door is not opened within 5 minutes, the power will be turned off automatically.
- CSD power off



Tap the © icon on the CSD and tap **POWER OFF** in the **Vehicle** function setting interface, and the vehicle will power off after a period of time.

① Note!

- Power-off via the CSD can be restored by depressing the brake pedal.
- When there is no network signal in the vehicle, try to power on again after powering off for more than 10min. If there is still no network signal, please contact Lotus retailer.
- Emergency power off



- 1. Low-voltage MSD plug
- 2. Low-voltage MSD cable
- Open the bonnet and disconnect the low-voltage MSD plug, then the car will be powered off automatically.
- In an emergency, you can open the bonnet to cut off the low-voltage MSD cable and the vehicle will be powered off automatically.

⚠ Warning!

Do not operate under the bonnet until the car automatically turns off the power supply for 3 minutes.

① Note!

During the vehicle power-off, you will hear a sound, which is a normal phenomenon caused by the self-test of braking system.

Start

Key fob/UWB digital key to start the vehicle

After entering the vehicle with the key fob/UWB digital key, press the brake pedal to start the vehicle. Switch gears to R or D, and the vehicle is in drivable mode.

⚠ Warning!

To avoid any unintended acceleration, you must press the brake pedal to shift into D or R.

① Note!

- The key fob will enter the sleep mode after being stationary in the vehicle for a period of time, and it is ineffective to start the vehicle at this time until it returns to normal after being moved.
- When the vehicle is in drivable mode, the READY indicator on instrument cluster will be illuminated.

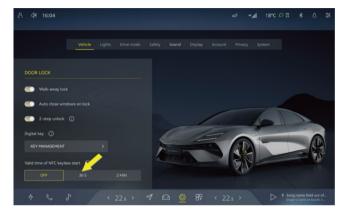
- During charging, the vehicle cannot be started by depressing the brake pedal, and the instrument cluster will display s^C and relevant prompt information.
- If the brake pedal is not depressed to shift, the prompt "Please depress the brake pedal to release the gear lever" will be displayed on instrument cluster.
- After the instrument cluster shows that the key fob battery has low capacity, please replace battery in time, refer to Replacement of key fob battery.

Card key/NFC digital key to start the vehicle



Starting with card key

According to your usage habits, you can click on the licon on the central control screen, select **Vehicle** - **Valid time of NFC keyless** start set the NFC authentication free time.



When you unlock the vehicle using the card key/NFC digital key, you can start the vehicle by pressing the brake pedal during the NFC authentication free period. If the NFC authentication free time has passed and the vehicle has not been started, the central display screen will prompt accordingly. The card key/NFC digital key needs to be placed in the wireless charging induction area, and the vehicle can only be started after pressing the brake pedal. Switch gears to R or D, and the vehicle is in a drivable state.

① Note!

If you need to use the wireless charging function of your phone, you can place the card key in another position on the vehicle.

Shift operation

When the gear lever is moved to switch gears, the corresponding gear information will be displayed on the instrument cluster at the same time.



Gear lever

Caution!

P/R/D gear can be engaged under the following conditions:

- P gear can be switched to when the vehicle speed is below 3km/h.
- R gear can be switched to when the vehicle is driving forward at a speed less than 8km/h.
- D gear can be switched to when the vehicle is driving backwards at a speed less than 8km/h.

Before switching gears, press the brake pedal to stop the vehicle stably.

Reverse (R)

To engage into reverse (R) gear, press the brake pedal when the vehicle is stationary, and pull the gear lever forward and then release it.

Neutral (N)

To switch to neutral (N) gear from drive (D) or reverse (R) gear, you can pull the gear lever forward or backward shortly.

① Note!

When the vehicle runs at a speed greater than 3km/h, it will take a long time to shift from D or R gear to N gear, and simultaneously

the instrument cluster will display texts accompanied by audible sounds.

Drive (D)

To engage into drive (D) gear, press the brake pedal when the vehicle is stopped stably, and pull the gear lever backward and then release it.

① Note!

- When the vehicle is engaged into P gear, the brake pedal must be pressed for shifting to another gear.
- The reversing lamp is turned on when the R gear is engaged.
- The brake pedal must be depressed to prevent the vehicle from slipping when the N gear is engaged.
- When the D or R gear is engaged, the vehicle will move forward/ backwards slowly while the brake pedal is released and the accelerator pedal is not depressed.
- When the vehicle is in D gear, opening the main driving door, keeping the brake on, and switching the P-gear vehicle will issue a warning alarm, and accompanied by text prompts on the central display screen.

Park (P)



Park (P) button

After the vehicle is stationary, press the P button to switch to P gear, and the EPB will be applied for automatic parking.

In stationary position after a period of inaction, the EPB will be automatically released.

The park (P) gear will be engaged automatically when all of the following conditions are met in non-charging state of the vehicle:

The vehicle is in READY state, the vehicle speed is less than 3km/h and the current gear is not P.

- Any two of the following conditions are met: the driver door is open, the driver seat belt is unfastened, and the driver seat sensor does not detect the seat occupancy.
- The accelerator pedal and the brake pedal are not depressed.

The park (P) gear will be engaged automatically when all of the following conditions are met in charging state of the vehicle:

- The vehicle speed is below 3km/h and the current gear is not P.
- The charging plug is connected.

① Note!

Please ensure that the P gear is engaged before leaving the vehicle or when parking on a slope. Otherwise, vehicle slipping may occur.

If the service brake fails at the vehicle speed above 3km/h, pressing and holding the P gear button will trigger the emergency braking function, which can be released when you release the P gear button. If the vehicle speed is still greater than 3km/h after the P button is released, the vehicle will remain in current D/N/R gear. If the P button is not released when the vehicle decelerates to 3km/h and below, the P gear will be engaged automatically.

Launch control*

Certain models are provided with the function of launch control. After the launch control is activated, the vehicle can provide the maximum traction to improve driving experience.

⚠ Warning!

- Launch control is recommended in a closed road section. Before launch control, it shall be confirmed that the driver and passengers are not in a state of physical discomfort, and that the front and surrounding environment are free from any potential risk of interfering with vehicle operation.
- Do not execute the launch control on smooth or slippery roads, as the drive wheels may slip and deflect, increasing the risk of accidents and causing personal injury.

① Note!

Launch control will accelerate the vehicle from a stationary state to its optimal state, therefore, it is best to execute the launch control on a road with high grip, provided that the tyres and vehicle are in good conditions.

Conditons for launch control

All of the following conditions must be met to achieve launch control:

- There is no fault warning after the vehicle is powered on.
- The high voltage battery level is more than or equivalent to 20% SOC.

- The temperature of high voltage battery is within a reasonable range.
- The bonnet, all doors and tailgate are closed and the driver seat belt is fastened
- Towing mode is not activated.

① Note!

If the ambient temperature is too low or too high, the low temperature battery preheating or battery insulation function can be used respectively to keep the high voltage battery at an appropriate working temperature.

Launch control procedures

- When the vehicle is stationary, switch to P gear and change the driving mode to sports or track mode.
- Depress the brake pedal with your left foot and centre the steering wheel.
- Move the gear lever to the drive (D) gear, and ensure that the auto hold is not activated and the electronic calliper is in the released state.
- 4. Turn off the ESC.
- While keeping the brake pedal depressed to the bottom, depress the accelerator pedal completely with your right foot and wait for the vehicle head to lift up to complete the ejection

preparation. When the preparations for launch control are completed, the instrument cluster will display text prompt to indicate that the ejection mode has been activated.

6. The brake pedal is released within 4s, and the motor outputs with the maximum torque to achieve an launch control.

① Note!

In the process of launch control, the ejection function will exit in any of the following cases:

- The brake pedal is depressed.
- The accelerator pedal is released.
- Autonomous emergency braking (AEB) is activated.

Limitations of the launch control

Launch control can only be used when the ambient temperature is higher than 3°C .

Acoustic vehicle alerting system (AVAS)

Electric vehicles produce relatively low noise when running. This vehicle is equipped with an acoustic vehicle alerting system (AVAS) that can alert nearby pedestrians.

The AVAS is turned on by default and cannot be turned off.

⚠ Warning!

- Do not privately modify the vehicle's acoustic vehicle alerting system as this may cause the system to not function properly.
- If the acoustic vehicle alerting system does not work properly, please contact the Lotus retailer to inspection.

Active rear spoiler*

The active rear spoiler mainly provides down force to counteract the lift caused by airflow during driving, so that the vehicle has better grip. The position can be switched according to the operation scene to reduce aerodynamic drag or increase down force.

Controlling active rear spoiler manually



You can tap the cicon on the CSD, and tap the active tail switch to enter the manual control active rear spoiler interface.



You can manually adjust the active rear spoiler by clicking on different gears.



Click the icon on CSD and select **Vehicle** to open the **Spoiler always active**, when the spoiler always active is turned on, the active rear spoiler of the vehicle will remain in the position set before the power is turned off. When the spoiler always active is closed, the active rear wing of the vehicle will automatically turn off.

⚠ Warning!

When manually opening or closing the active rear spoiler, please ensure that there are no obstacles around the active rear spoiler. Do not put your hands or any objects between the moving active rear spoiler and the body to prevent pinching or damaging the active rear spoiler.

L Caution!

- Do not pull the vehicle by the active rear spoiler or push.
- When using the automatic car wash function, please close the active rear spoiler, otherwise it may cause damage to the vehicle.
- Please clean up the fallen leaves and other foreign matters under the active wing to prevent them from entering the drain pipe after decay, resulting in poor drainage or blockage.

① Note!

When the vehicle is running at a speed below 30km/h, the active rear spoiler can be manually adjusted; when the vehicle

- is running at a speed above 30km/h, the active rear spoiler adjustment interface of the CSD becomes grey to deactivate the manual adjustment of active rear wing.
- The active rear spoiler has a memory function. If the active rear spoiler is manually set to P1 or P2 before the vehicle turns off the power, the active rear spoiler will return to the position set when the power was turned off last time after the vehicle turns off the power.

Opening active rear spoiler automatically (without flaps)

Set the active rear spoiler mode in Individual mode:

- Tour mode: when the vehicle is running at a speed above 90km/h, the active rear spoiler will automatically move to a position providing low resistance. When the vehicle is running at a speed above 160km/h, the active rear spoiler will automatically move to a position providing high stability.
- Sport mode: when the vehicle is running at a speed above 110km/h, the active rear spoiler will automatically move to a position providing high stability.

When the driving mode is in range mode or tour mode:

 When the vehicle is running at a speed below 30km/h, the active rear spoiler will automatically return to the manually set position;

- When the vehicle is running at a speed of 90~160km/h, the active rear spoiler will automatically move to the position with low drag;
- When the vehicle is running at a speed above 160km/h, the active rear spoiler will automatically move to a position providing high stability.

When the driving mode is in sport mode or track mode:

- When the vehicle is running at a speed below 30km/h, the active rear spoiler will automatically return to the manually set position:
- When the vehicle is running at a speed above 110km/h, the active rear spoiler will automatically move to a position providing high stability.

Opening active rear spoiler automatically (with flaps)*

Set the active rear spoiler mode in Individual mode:

- Tour mode: when the vehicle is running at a speed above 160km/h, the active rear spoiler will automatically move to a position providing high stability.
- Sport mode: when the vehicle is running at a speed above 110km/h, the active rear spoiler will automatically move to a position providing high stability.

When the driving mode is in range mode or tour mode:

- When the vehicle is running at a speed below 30km/h, the active rear spoiler will automatically return to the manually set position;
- When the vehicle is running at a speed above 160km/h, the active rear spoiler will automatically move to a position providing high stability.

When the driving mode is in sport mode or track mode:

- When the vehicle is running at a speed below 30km/h, the active rear spoiler will automatically return to the manually set position:
- When the vehicle is running at a speed above 110km/h, the active rear spoiler will automatically move to a position providing high stability.

Drive mode

- Track mode*: in this mode, extraordinary dynamic response and dynamic driving performance can be provided. Please use it with caution on ordinary roads.
- Individual mode: you can choose distinct suspension height and steering mode for different drive mode according to your personal preference, so as to obtain better driving experience.
- Sport mode: this mode meets the driver's more intense driving needs, and has a sensitive dynamic response.

- Tour mode: it is a default drive mode, in which the driver can obtain a comfortable dynamic experience.
- Range mode: it can reduce energy consumption, meet daily driving needs and extend the range.

⚠ Warning!

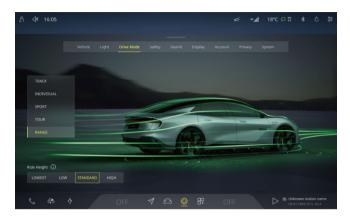
For your own safety and the safety of passengers and the vehicle, observe the following points:

- Familiarise yourself with the vehicle before starting a journey.
- Do not take any risks when driving.
- Adjust speed to the road conditions. The steeper and more uneven the road, the slower the speed should be.
- Avoid contact between the body and the ground.

Caution!

Objects on unpaved surfaces, for example stones or branches, can damage the vehicle. There is a risk of material damage. Do not drive on unpaved surfaces.

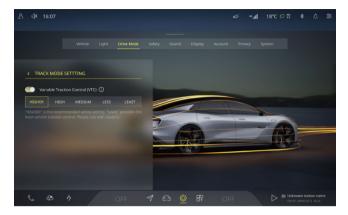
Switching drive mode on CSD



Tap the @ icon on the CSD and select **Drive Mode** to access the drive mode setting interface, where the drive mode can be switched.

Track mode*

The vehicle provides extraordinary power response and dynamic driving performance in track mode. Therefore, the track mode shall be applied with caution when driving on common roads.



The vehicle provides extraordinary power response and dynamic driving performance in track mode. Therefore, the track mode shall be applied with caution when driving on common roads.

⚠ Warning!

As the traction control level degrades, the probability of vehicle slip will gradually increase. Therefore, the traction control level must be set reasonably to avoid accidents or damages to the vehicle. It is recommended that you set to a level that can ensure safety to the **HIGHER** extent.

Caution!

- If you wish to engage in track driving (such as sports driving experience, club events, etc.), please consult the Lotus retailer first for more necessary guidance.
- During vehicle use, brake fluid absorbs moisture from the air and affects the braking effect at high temperatures. When driving vehicles on the track, attention should be paid to this impact, therefore, the brake fluid usage period of vehicles driven on the track should not exceed 12 months. If the car is really for a track use, brake fluid need to be checked after every track day.
- The wear condition of brake pads and brake discs mainly depends on driving style and driving conditions. Driving in high temperatures, such as on a race track, will accelerate the wear of brake components. Therefore, before and after driving on the track, the wear condition of the brake pads and brake discs should be checked.
- Under track driving conditions, frequent hard braking and short cooling time of the braking system will cause high temperature of the brake discs, which will affect the performance of the braking system, so you should cool down the vehicle properly when driving on the track and before leaving the track. The vehicle shall be driven at a slower speed without hard braking

- and parking brake to cool the vehicle with air flow. Failure to cool down may cause damage to the vehicle or components.
- Under more extreme driving conditions, if the brake disc temperature is too high, the instrument will display "High brake disc temperature, please drive with caution", in which case the vehicle should be cooled down by the cooling method for track driving conditions.

Switching drive mode via paddle

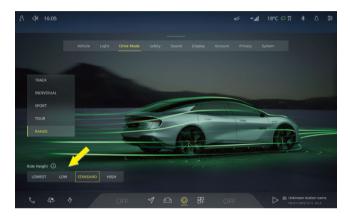


Drive mode paddles

Different drive modes can be switched to by turning the drive mode paddle on the right side of the steering wheel.

Air suspension

Manual adjustment of body height



You can tap the icon on the CSD, and select **Drive Mode** ,to access the body height adjustment interface, where you can adjust the body height.

① Note!

The suspension height can only be manually adjusted when the doors, hood, and tailgate are securely closed, and the steering angle should not be excessively large during the adjustment.

- Only certain driving modes allow for manual suspension height adjustment.
- Before parking and adjusting the air suspension, please ensure that there is a safety distance of at least 10cm in front and behind the vehicle to avoid the bumper being bumped when adjusting the height of the air suspension.

Automatic adjustment of body height

The air suspension allows automatic adjustment of the body height according to different driving modes and changes in current speed.

① Note!

After the vehicle speed exceeds 60km/h, the **HIGH** body height option is not available; After the vehicle speed exceeds 110km/h, the **STANDARD** body height option is not available.

Track mode*: when the driving mode is switched to track mode from any mode, the air suspension will automatically adjust the body height to **LOWEST** height to increase the reactivity and stability.

Sport mode: when the driving mode is switched to sport mode from comfort mode, the air suspension automatically lowers to a **LOW** height, increasing vehicle stability and reducing energy consumption.

Range mode: when the driving mode is switched to comfort mode from any mode, the air suspension will automatically adjust the body to STANDARD height, meeting the general driving needs of the driver when passing through urban roads or ordinary roads.

$oldsymbol{\Lambda}$ Warning!

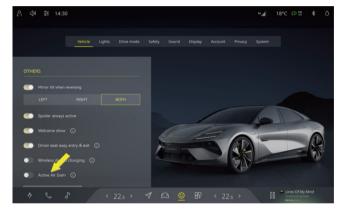
- To lift the vehicle, be sure to select the suspension maintenance mode in the maintenance setting interface, and turn off the air suspension automatic adjustment. If the auto adjustment is not turned off, the air suspension will automatically lower the body height, causing damage to the vehicle.
- When the body height is lower than the corresponding height of the driving mode or there is a low air spring pressure warning, please stop the vehicle at a safe place and contact Lotus retailer. If you keep driving, it may cause damage to the vehicle.

Caution!

When the vehicle is required to enter the **Towing mode*** (p.186) for the purpose of towing another vehicle using the electric towing hook, the air suspension will be automatically adjusted to a specific height and perform the load compensation to realize the towing function.

Active air dam*

The active air dam diverts the airflow flowing through the underbody to form a low-pressure zone, thereby increasing the downward pressure on the front of the body and improving its stability.



You can tap the @ icon on CSD and select **Vehicle** to activate or disable the active air dam.



Active air dam

The active air dam is located below the front bumper. With the active air dam activated, it will be deployed automatically when the vehicle is driving in non sport mode at a speed above 160km/h. If deployed, it will be automatically retracted when the vehicle speed falls below 120km/h.

With the active air dam activated, it will be deployed automatically when the vehicle is driving in sport mode at a speed above 110km/h. If deployed, it will be automatically retracted when the vehicle speed falls below 70km/h.

When the active air dam function is turned on, the notification bar will display its expanded status.



Caution!

- Do not forcefully deploy the active air dam to prevent vehicle damage.
- After the active air dam is deployed, the ground clearance decreases. Please pay attention to the road conditions and drive carefully to prevent collision and damage caused by the deployment of active air dam.

Self-learning of active air dam

When the 12V battery loses power or the active air dam gets stuck during movement, the active air dam will start self-learning immediately after the vehicle is started and parked.

The active air dam will automatically deploy and retract during self-learning until the self-learning is completed after lasting about 20s.

Caution!

During the self-learning of active air dam, if you need to drive the vehicle, please pay attention to the road conditions and drive carefully to prevent collision and damage caused by the deployment of active air dam.

① Note!

If the self-learning of active air dam fails, the corresponding prompt content will be displayed in the instrument cluster.

Active rear diffuser*

The active rear diffuser can divert airflow from the bottom of the vehicle, improving the tyre grip and reducing the wind resistance.



The active rear diffuser can be found under the rear bumper. When the vehicle speed is greater than 90km/h, the active rear diffuser will be automatically turned on. When the vehicle speed is lower than 30km/h, the active rear diffuser, if turned on, will be automatically turned off.

Caution!

Do not forcefully deploy the active rear diffuser to prevent vehicle damage.

Active rear diffuser self-learning

When the 12V battery loses power or the active rear diffuser gets stuck during movement, the active rear diffuser begins self-learning when the vehicle is unlocked and parked.

The active rear diffuser will automatically unfold and retract during self-learning, and complete self-learning after a certain period of time.

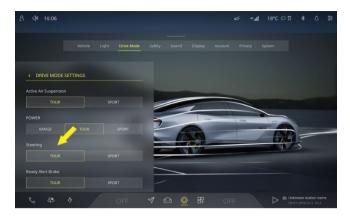
① Note!

If the limitations of active rear diffuser fails, the corresponding prompt content will be displayed in the instrument cluster.

Steering mode

Electronic power assisted steering (EPAS) system

The EPAS provides assistance when the driver turns the steering wheel, thus enhancing vehicle's controllability and stability and improving steering handiness.



You can tap the @ icon on the CSD, and select the **Drive Mode** to access the steering mode setting interface in personalized mode and switch to the steering mode.

- Tour mode: ensures the sensitivity of the steering wheel while taking into account the road feedback, and improves the manipulativeness of the daily use.
- Sport mode: increases the force required to turn the steering wheel and improves the sensitivity of the direction. The vehicle gives a quicker response when driving at a high speed, which provides an excellent driving experience.

① Note!

When switching to different driving modes, the steering mode will be automatically switched to the corresponding mode.

Rear wheel steering (RWS)*

Rear wheel steering (RWS) helps reduce the turning radius when parked at low speeds. When driving dynamically, vehicle stability and steering sensitivity are improved in a timely manner.

Driving mode

The vehicle is driven in four-wheel driving mode, that is, four wheels are driven at the same time, thus increasing traction.

When the vehicle enters or exits the turn, the power will be automatically distributed to the front and rear axles at a certain ratio, so as to achieve more stable, efficient driveability at turns, and improve vehicle agility and stability as much as possible even in the case of intense driving.

The four-wheel driving mode improves the driving stability of the vehicle on wet and slippery roads, and realizes smooth acceleration and good comfort.

The drive performance of all wheels varies depending on the selected driving mode.

Active grille shutter (AGS)

The active grille shutter (AGS) automatically adjusts the grille opening, thereby reducing unnecessary heat dissipation from the bonnet. It quickly increases the coolant temperature during cold start of the vehicle and maintains the coolant within an appropriate working temperature during driving, thereby improving the mechanical performance of the vehicle and the effect of heater at low temperatures.

⚠ Warning!

- Please ensure that there are no obstacles around the AGS, and do not put your hands or any objects into the moving AGS to prevent pinching or damage to the AGS.
- AGS has anti pinch function, but there is no anti pinch function around 4mm at the end.

Caution!

Please slow down and drive at a speed ≤30km/h when wading, otherwise the AGS may be damaged.



Symmetrical distribution of AGS

The AGS of the vehicle will be automatically turned on/off in any of the following usage scenarios:

- When the vehicle is locked, the AGS will be kept off;
- When proximity unlocking of the vehicle is enabled, the AGS will be turned on and off automatically once;
- When there are needs for air volume, the AGS will be automatically turned on;
- When the ambient temperature is too high, the AGS will be automatically turned on and kept on;
- When the vehicle speed exceeds 150km/h, the AGS will be turned on automatically.

Tyre pressure monitoring system

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly.

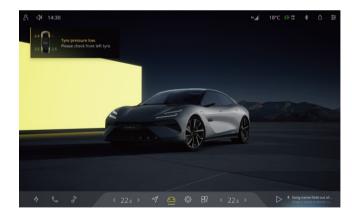
As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tyre pressure telltale when one or more of your tyres is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tyre pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tyres as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure.



Click the $\ensuremath{\mathfrak{G}}$ icon in the CSD, and select **Vehicle** - **MAINTENANCE** to check the tyre status.

- Tyre over-temperature, tyre leakage, low sensor power alarm When the alarm of tyre over-temperature, tyre leakage and low sensor power is activated, a prompt message will be popped up and the corresponding tyre triggering the alarm will be showed in yellow in the CSD.
- Low tyre pressure alarm

When the low tyre pressure alarm is activated, the TPMS status indicator (!) will be illuminated on the instrument cluster, a prompt message will be popped up and the corresponding tyre triggering the alarm will be showed in yellow in the CSD. After the tyre is inflated to the standard tyre pressure value in the cold state, the low tyre pressure alarm will disappear.



⚠ Warning!

- Should the TPMS status indicator (1) light up or blink while driving, safely park the car and reach out to a Lotus dealer. Failure to do so may result in personal injury or damage to the vehicle.
- Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tyre maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tyre pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tyre pressure telltale.
- Driving on a significantly under-inflated tyre causes the tyre to overheat and can lead to tyre failure.

If your vehicle has tyres of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tyre inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tyre inflation pressure for those tyres.



① Note!

- Each tyre, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tyre inflation pressure label.
- The TPMS can not provide an early indication of rapid tyre damage caused by external factors (e.g., burst), nor does it identify the natural, uniform pressure loss of all tyres over a long period of time.
- The TPMS receives the tyre pressure data last time after the vehicle is stopped and powered on again, and can update the real-time tyre pressure value only after the vehicle runs at a speed of 30km/h for several minutes.

- During the driving process, the tyre monitor system collects data every once in a while, so there is a delay in displaying the tyre pressure value.
- Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tyre tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

TPMS fault alarm

When the TPMS fault alarm is activated, the TPMS status indicator (1) on the instrument panel will flash for a period of time and then remain on until the alarm disappears, and the fault information will be displayed on the CSD.

The TPMS might malfunction due to various reasons:

- Sensor malfunction.
- Use of non-compatible tyres or wheel modifications.
- Presence of fluid in the tyre or use of tyre repair liquid.
- Driving with snow chains attached.

The TPMS might be impacted in the following situations:

- Proximity to TV stations, power stations, gas stations, radio stations, large screen displays, airports, and other installations that emit strong radio waves or electrical interference.
- Outfitting the car with accessories that could interfere with the radio receiver or the car's electrical system.

① Note!

Only tyres of the specifications specified by Lotus are allowed to be replaced, otherwise the TPMS may not work normally.

Safe parking

Safe parking can prevent vehicle damage or safety accidents caused by improper operation. When you need to park safely, please follow the following steps:

- 1. Depress and hold the brake pedal.
- 2. After the vehicle is stopped, engage in P gear, at this time the EPB will be automatically activated, the P indicator on the instrument cluster will be illuminated, as will the EPB indicator.
- 3. Release the brake pedal.
- 4. Be sure to take away all valid keys when leaving the vehicle.
- Make sure that everyone in the vehicle, especially children, is out of the vehicle.
- 6. Lock the vehicle.

Caution!

 When parking on the uphill/downhill, be sure to pay attention to the surrounding environment, and check whether the vehicle is parked stably to prevent it from slipping. Observe the relevant legal regulations when parking.

Braking system

Energy recovery

During driving, the driving experience can be improved by adjusting the energy recovery level which, together with the motor braking, can reduce the loss of brake heat, thereby improving energy consumption.

• Coasting energy recovery

The coasting energy is recovered when the accelerator pedal and the brake pedal are released.

• Braking energy recovery

The braking energy is recovered when the brake pedal is depressed.

Factors affecting energy recovery efficiency

The energy recovery efficiency depends on the following factors:

- Current power and temperature of high voltage battery.
- Energy recovery levels.

Energy recovery levels



Energy recovery level adjustment

- 1. Energy recovery levels
- 2. Energy recovery paddle

You can adjust the energy recovery level via the upper/lower energy recovery paddle on the left side of steering wheel.

The energy recovery level is adjustable in four gears, the default energy recovery level of the vehicle is low. Press "REGEN +" to increase energy recovery level to high. Press "REGEN -" to lower the energy recovery level to off.

The energy recovery level defaults to third gear each time the vehicle is started.

Caution!

The regenerative braking with energy recovery is not a substitute for braking to ensure safety. You should apply the brakes in time according to the actual situation.

① Note!

When the power battery is fully charged, the battery temperature is too low or too high, the energy recovery braking will be temporarily weakened, please take care to combine the instrument cues and maintain a safe braking distance.

Auto hold

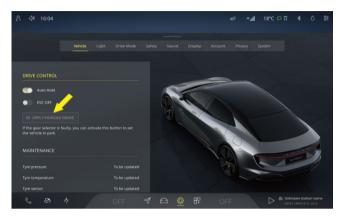
With the auto hold switch on, if the vehicle needs to be stopped on a flat or downhill road for a short time, depress the brake pedal deeply after the vehicle stops, then the auto hold will be activated automatically and its indicator on the instrument cluster will be illuminated. In case of uphill road, there is no need to continue depressing the brake pedal, as the auto hold will be activated automatically with its indicator illuminated on the instrument cluster and it will apply the brake for you to keep the vehicle stopped. When you start driving by depressing the accelerator pedal, the auto hold will be automatically deactivated.



When the ESC and EPB systems are fault-free, you can click @ icon in CSD to select the **Vehicle**, and enable AUTO HOLD.

To deactivate the AUTO HOLD, click the control button on the CSD again.

Electronic parking brake (EPB)



This vehicle is equipped with an electronic parking brake (EPB), which is automatically activated/deactivated with the change of vehicle gear. Tap the icon on CSD and select **Vehicle** to turn on/off the EPB.

- When the stationary vehicle is engaged into P gear, the EPB indicator on the instrument cluster will be illuminated, indicating that the EPB is activated.
- When you depress the brake pedal and move the gear lever in D or R position for a stationary vehicle, the EPB indicator on the instrument cluster will go out, indicating that the EPB is deactivated.

! Caution!

If the 'D' indicator on the instrument cluster flashes, the vehicle cannot park normally or the EPB is released, you can try to shift gears. If the 'D' indicator still flashes, contact your Lotus retailer immediately for maintenance.

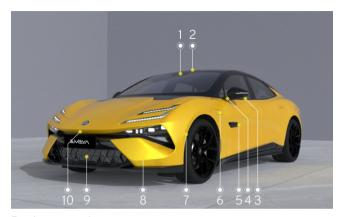
Driving assistance system

Sensors and cameras

Sensors of driving assist system

The car is equipped with a variety of radars and cameras, which are used to detect the distance from the vehicle ahead, identify traffic or road signs, and detect surrounding vehicles, pedestrians, etc.

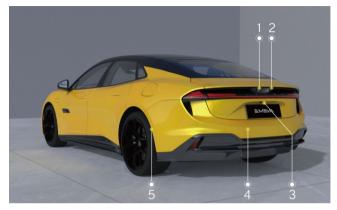
Front sensor and camera



Front sensor and camera

- 1. Front camera
- 2. Front LiDAR*
- 3. Left/right surround camera
- 4. Outside front camera
- 5. Outside rear camera
- 6. Left/right front side LiDAR*
- 7. Left/right long range ultrasonic radar
- 8. Left/right detection radar
- 9. Front imaging radar
- 10. Front surround camera

Rear sensor and camera



Rear sensor and camera

- 1. Rear LiDAR*
- 2. Rear camera
- 3. Rear surround camera
- 4. Left/right side detection radar
- 5. Rear long range ultrasonic radar

Caution!

Laser irradiation of the cameras will cause irreversible damage. The camera should be avoided by laser irradiation. If a camera fails, please contact the Lotus retailer for maintenance.

- When there is dirt or snow on any of the cameras, radars or the surrounding areas, a warning message will pop up on the CSD. If the warning message on the instrument cluster does not disappear after the dirt or snow is removed, park the car safely and contact your Lotus retailer.
- When the road conditions on the left and right carriageways of the road on which you are driving on are quite different, the radar detection may be affected, leading to a warning message popping up on the instrument cluster.
- Keep the front windshield clean and dry. Do not apply a metallic film to the front windshield as this could interfere with the operation of vehicle electronic devices.
- Repair or replacement of the driver assist system and its components must be done by qualified technicians using professional equipment, so you must contact the Lotus retailer for any such repairs.

Enabling lidar*

The LiDAR can be deployed automatically through the welcome function (performed at startup) and intelligent driving functions to activate automatic deployment. It can also be deployed manually via the CSD.



Open **Welcome show** (p.113) and when the vehicle is unlocked, the LiDAR will automatically unfold and fold up.

⚠ Warning!

When deploying or retracting the LiDAR, ensure that there are no obstacles around it. Do not put your hands or any objects near the LiDAR as it deploys or retracts to prevent a pinching injury or damaging the LiDAR.

Caution!

 The LiDAR should be turned off and folded away before washing the car to prevent damage to components. • In cold weather, do not wash the LiDAR with a water jet for a long time or intentionally introduce water into the LiDAR mounting gap. The LiDAR could become frozen and therefore unable to extend normally.



HWA switch

The front LiDAR can be deployed when the HWA is activated via the multi-function button on the left of the steering wheel. Refer to (p.232).

When the vehicle is locked and powered off, or the HWA is not used for more than 6 minutes, the LiDAR will fold away.



When the vehicle is powered on and the gear lever is in the P position, you can manually unfold all the LiDARs with one touch as needed. The LiDAR cannot be deployed manually in any of the following conditions:

- The gear lever is not in P position.
- A LiDAR component has malfunctioned.
- The LiDAR is being automatically deployed or retracted.
- The LiDAR is being washed.
- The vehicle is bring driven.

Cleaning the LiDAR*



When the vehicle is powered on and the gear lever is in the P position, the front LiDAR can be cleaned manually with one touch as needed. The LiDAR cannot be cleaned manually in any of the following conditions:

- The gear lever is not in P position.
- A LiDAR component has malfunctioned.
- The LiDAR is being deployed or retracted.
- The vehicle is being driven.

① Note!

- To prolong the service life of the LiDAR components, do not use the manual wash and manual unfold functions repeatedly within a short period of time.
- If there is air in the washer fluid tube, water may not be sprayed out by the washer. In this case, try to turn on the wash function several times to bleed the air, and the function will return to normal.
- The LiDAR wash function may consume a lot of washer fluid. Therefore, ensure that the washer fluid is sufficiently topped up before using the function. If the instrument cluster displays that the washer fluid level is low, the washing performance will be degraded or the washer may not be usable at all.
- If white foam is generated during the cleaning of the LiDAR, wipe off the foam to avoid blocking your line of sight. It is recommended to replace the detergent with low foam detergent.

Limitations of sensors of driver assist system

The drive assistance system sensors have certain limitations. In daily car use, you must pay attention to the following conditions, or the drive assistance system may not work properly:

 Do not attach accessories (such as registration plate decorative frames, decals, etc.) to the radars, cameras and their surrounding areas, as the efficient range of the sensors may be affected, causing part of the drive assistance system fail to operate normally.

- Adverse weather conditions, such as heavy snow, rain, fog, etc., may weaken the sensors or cause the system to temporarily stop working.
- Intense light, reflections on the road, icy or snow-covered roads, water on the road, dirty roads or blurred lane markings may significantly reduce the ability of the camera to identify vehicles, pedestrians, traffic signs or other obstacles.
- The radars may be subject to interference from other radio devices or strong radar reflections, thus generating false warnings or reducing detection accuracy.
- In some cases, the radar may detect vehicles later than expected or fail to detect a vehicle.
- When you are driving on a winding, narrow, steep road or driving into or out of tunnels, the radars may not be able to detect vehicles or other obstacles ahead.
- Do not hit the sensors and their surrounding areas hard.
- If there are cracks, scratches or stone chips in the bumper area around a radar sensor, the function may be affected.

Adaptive cruise control (ACC)

The adaptive cruise control (ACC) is a system to maintain a safe following distance within the speed set by the driver. The speed drive range of ACC is 0-150km/h. ACC maintains automatically the following distance so you don't have to and henceforth it reduces the driving fatigue.

⚠ Warning!

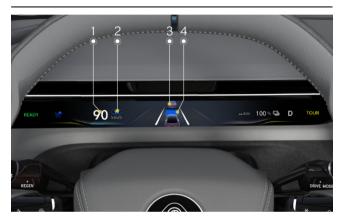
- ACC is an auxiliary function that cannot replace you in driving or avoiding collisions. The maximum deceleration of ACC is limited, and it is always your responsibility to drive the vehicle safely and comply with current laws and traffic regulations.
- ACC can adjust the vehicle speed smoothly based on vehicle status and traffic conditions ahead. The system may fail to apply the brake in an emergency. When necessary, you should take the initiative to take braking when required to do so.
- ACC is not usable in all driving scenarios, traffic weather and road conditions.
- You must intervene and override the vehicle immediately if ACC fails to maintain a proper speed or distance from the vehicle ahead.
- Repair or replacement of ACC and its components requires professional equipment and technicians, so you must contact the Lotus retailer for any such repairs.
- ACC may fail to recognize animals, pedestrians, traffic signs (such as cones, water horses, signs, etc.), unusually-shaped vehicles, vehicles loaded with irregularly shaped cargoes or small vehicles such as bicycles, tricycles and motorcycles.

- ACC may also fail to recognize slow-moving, stationary or approaching vehicles or other stationary objects.
- Do not use ACC in environments with poor driving conditions, such as heavily congested traffic roads with water or slush, heavy rain and snow, poor visibility, windy conditions or driving on steep roads.
- In situations where the lighting conditions are not ideal at night or the road's lighting is cluttered and chaotic, it may lead to misidentification, missed recognition, or inaccurate recognition of the target by the camera, resulting in misbraking, failure to brake or delayed braking of ACC. In this situation, you need to use the ACC function with caution, keep your attention on the road and be ready to take over the vehicle at any time.
- ACC will not respond to vehicles or objects crossing the lane in which your vehicle is being driven.
- Loading too many items in the boot may cause a change in vehicle attitude, which may degrade or disable the target identification of ACC.
- When another vehicle changes lanes in front of your vehicle, ACC may not have time to respond, requiring you to apply the brakes.
- When driving downhill on steep slopes, it may be difficult for ACC to maintain proper distance from the vehicle ahead. In these situations, be extra careful and always be ready to apply the brakes.

- When you are driving on a winding road, the identification of a target may be delayed or inaccurate, which may cause ACC to brake unexpectedly or brake too late.
- On a road with sharp turns, the ACC may not be able to detect the vehicle ahead as normal due to the limitations of the camera or radar, in which case, the vehicle may accelerate unexpectedly, so you need to override the vehicle appropriately according to the actual situation in front of you.
- When a vehicle in the adjacent lane ahead cuts in front of your vehicle, detection may be affected or delayed in some conditions. The reflection intensity from the target may be too small in the case of smaller vehicles, or electromagnetic interference could momentarily interrupt detection. As a result, ACC may fail to identify the target or it may calculate the distance to the vehicle ahead inaccurately. In this case, there may be no ACC response or the braking may be delayed, so you need to be prepared to override the vehicle.

- If ACC fails, the of icon will be shown in grey to remind you to override the vehicle.
- Take care when installing the front registration plate frame. A large metal registration plate frame will affect the output of

ACC radar signal, which may lead to incorrect processing of driving data or a false warning given by the radar.



- Current speed
- 2. Target speed
- 3. Vehicle ahead
- 4. Following distance

The following distance refers to the time required for your vehicle, at its current speed, to reach the current position of the vehicle ahead.



No target vehicle ahead is detected.



When ACC is not activated, a target vehicle appears ahead.



The subject vehicle is very close to the target vehicle in front. The safety distance is not respected.



ACC is active and a target is selected within a safe distance.

When ACC is active, you can change the following distance which is displayed on the instrument cluster. Three values are available (near, medium and far). The selected value is memorized for next drives.

⚠ Warning!

You must maintain an appropriate speed and a safe distance and take braking actions in a timely manner if necessary.

- ACC can control your vehicle to accelerate and decelerate.
 When the vehicle is decelerating, the brake system starts to work and may make a sound, which is normal.
- When your vehicle is following the vehicle ahead under the control of ACC and the following distance is too close, the autonomous emergency braking (AEB) may be triggered.

Activate ACC



Left multi-function button

When the vehicle is stationary, you can activate ACC with the following steps:

- 1. Scroll the left multi-function button leftwards to switch to ACC, the of icon is displayed in white, and ACC enters ready mode.
- 2. Depress the brake pedal or activate the AUTO HOLD function.
- 3. Press the left multi-function button to activate ACC, the of icon is displayed in blue.
- 4. After the brake pedal is released, scroll up the left multifunction button or gently step the accelerator pedal, then ACC will control the car to start and run at set target speed.

When the vehicle is running, you can activate the ACC in the following steps:

- 1. Scroll the left multi-function button leftwards to switch to ACC, the of icon is displayed in white and ACC enters ready mode.
- 2. Press the left multi-function button to activate ACC, the of icon is displayed in blue.

① Note!

When the car is running at a speed below 30km/h, the speed set for cruising is 30km/h; when the car is running at a speed above 30km/h, the speed set for cruising is the current speed.

Adjusting ACC



Adjusting ACC

- 1. Left multi-function button
- 2. Following distance button

When ACC is activated, you can set different target speeds and following distance as required:

Target speed: when you scroll up or down on the left multifunction button briefly, the target speed will increase or decrease by 5km/h. When you scroll up or down on the left multifunction button heavily, the target speed will increase or decrease in steps of 1km/h.

① Note!

When ACC and automatic speed limit alarm are turned on at the same time, after automatic speed limit alarm recognizes the road traffic speed limit sign, you can tap the recognized speed limit sign on the CSD to quickly set the target speed.

Following distance: scroll up or down the following distance button to increase or decrease the following distance(The interface displays one grid, which means that the distance from the car in front is closer, two grids, second, and three grids indicate that the distance from the car in front is farther).

⚠ Warning!

Always keep your vehicle at a safe distance from other vehicles. If the following distance is close, personal injury or vehicle damage may occur in the event of a traffic accident.

① Note!

- When no target vehicle is detected ahead, the ACC will control the subject vehicle to drive at the set target speed.
- When the accelerator pedal is depressed, the vehicle will accelerate temporarily. When the accelerator pedal is released, the vehicle will decelerate slowly to the set target speed.

- If the vehicle speed is not changed significantly with the ACC in operation, it may be because acceleration is not permitted due to the set following distance.
- The higher the vehicle speed, the longer the following distance is.

Deactivating ACC

Pressing the multi-function button on the left side of the steering wheel or pressing the brake pedal, the ACC will be temporarily deactivated, the icon if will be white and the ACC will enter ready mode.

ACC is automatically deactivated when any of the following occurs:

- The wipers are at the highest level.
- Any one of the doors, bonnet and tailgate is opened.
- The driver seat belt is unfastened.
- The wheels lose grip.
- There is a system fault (such as camera, radar, brake, steering, etc.).
- The EPB is activated.
- The accelerator pedal is pressed to accelerate for more than 3min or the speed exceeds 155km/h.
- The ESC is deactivated or malfunctioning.
- The gear lever is disengaged from drive (D) gear.

- The front windscreen or the front radar area is covered by dust, rain, frost, snow or other dirt.
- The driving mode is switched to track mode.
- The trailer mode is activated.
- Triggering of the AEB.
- Triggering of the ABS.

The function cannot be activated when any of the above conditions are not met, and there is a prompt at this time.

⚠ Warning!

After ACC is deactivated, you must take over control of your car to ensure the driving safety.

Restoring ACC

When ACC enters ready mode. Scroll up the left multi-function button, ACC will be reactivated, and the 👸 icon turn blue.

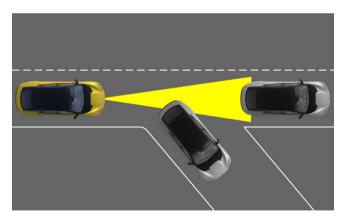
Follow-up in cruising

When ACC controls your car to follow the vehicle ahead, if the vehicle ahead decelerates gradually to stop, your car will also decelerates gradually to stop as the vehicle ahead dose, with a safe distance maintained all the time.

For a short period after stopping, the ACC can automatically follow the vehicle ahead and control the subject vehicle to start.

Changing target vehicle

When the adaptive cruise control (ACC) controls the subject vehicle to follow the vehicle ahead, if a vehicle cuts in from other lanes and moves between the subject vehicle and the vehicle ahead, the ACC will automatically select the vehicle as the new target vehicle. The following distance will also be adjusted based on the new target vehicle.



When ACC is activated, if the target vehicle your car follows suddenly turns and there is another stationary vehicle ahead, the system may not make any response to the stationary vehicle and may accelerate to the set target speed. At this point, you must actively pressed the brake pedal to brake and slow down your vehicle.

Limitations of ACC

The ACC is mainly suitable for driving on smooth roads. When ACC is used when driving downhill on steep slopes or with heavy loads, it may be difficult to maintain the correct following distance from the vehicle ahead.

Highway assist (HWA)*

The highway assist (HWA) can actively control the speed of the subject vehicle within $0\sim150\,\mathrm{km/h}$ and provide steering assistance according to the set target speed and following distance between vehicles. At low speed, HWA can control your vehicle to follow the target vehicle if any of the lane lines is blocked or invisible.



Reminder to hold steering wheel

With HWA on, when the system detects that the driver is not holding the steering wheel, a prompt for holding the steering wheel will be displayed on the instrument cluster; If the system still does not detect the driver holding the steering wheel, a prompt for holding the steering wheel will be displayed on the instrument cluster, accompanied by an audible reminder; If the driver is still not detected holding the steering wheel, a prompt for taking over the vehicle will be displayed on the instrument cluster, accompanied by an audible reminder.

Minimum risk manoeuver (MRM)

If the driver continues to ignore take over override prompt, a text alarm will be displayed on the instrument cluster to remind the driver to take over the vehicle, and the HWA will perform a minimum risk maneuver, which brakes the car smoothly to a full stop.

After the instrument cluster prompts that HWA has exited, you need to scroll up/down the button on the left of steering wheel to restore HWA.

⚠ Warning!

- HWA is only an auxiliary function, and the steering force provided by this function is only steering assistance, which cannot meet all road conditions and cannot fully achieve autonomous driving. You always have a responsibility to drive your vehicle safely and comply with current laws and traffic regulations.
- HWA can only be used on enclosed roads such as highways or elevated roads. However, you should always concentrate on driving and override the vehicle quickly in case of an emergency.
- You must override the vehicle immediately when HWA fails to maintain a proper speed or distance from the vehicle ahead.
- Loading too many items in the boot may cause a change in vehicle attitude, which may degrade or disable the performance of HWA.
- When another vehicle changes lanes to the front of your car, HWA may not have time to respond. At this point, you shall apply brake in time.

- HWA is not a collision avoidance system, and it is your responsibility to apply braking in an emergency.
- When driving downhill on steep slopes, it may be difficult for HWA to maintain proper distance from the vehicle ahead. In these situations, be extra careful and always be ready to apply braking.
- HWA may not respond to animals, small vehicles such as bicycles and motorcycles, or stationary vehicles.
- When the vehicle follows the vehicle ahead at low speed, HWA can control the steering torque according to the trajectory of the vehicle ahead, in this way your vehicle can move laterally slowly as the vehicle ahead does. At this time, the driver is required to pay special attention to the traffic situation on both sides of the vehicle.
- HWA may not respond to vehicles or objects crossing the lane where your vehicle is running in. You need to be attentive at all times, take braking measures and override the vehicle if necessary.
- When the HWA is working, if you depress the accelerator pedal, the vehicle will be overridden by you, responding to your acceleration need. The control by the HWA system will not be functioning.
- The selection of a target may be delayed or interfered with when driving into and out of curves. HWA may brake unexpectedly or brake too late.

- If you are driving on serpentine roads or sharp turns, you should always be prepared to take over the steering wheel control direction. Due to the limited field of view of the medium range radar, HWA cannot detect the vehicle in front normally, which may cause the vehicle to accelerate. Therefore, do not use HWA in these situations.
- HWA may recognize road edges (walls, guardrails, curbs, grass, anti-skid paved strips, and asphalt joints) as lane lines during its operation, so you need to be alert to it.
- When the HWA function is activated, you should always be ready to take over the steering wheel, especially in corners. When traveling through winding, sharp turns, you should immediately take over the steering wheel control of the vehicle, do not use the HWA in this situation.
- HWA is an improvement of ACC, and ACC related precautions also apply to HWA.

When the HWA fails, the icon los is shown in grey to remind the driver to take over the control of the vehicle.



- 1. Current speed
- 2. Target speed
- Vehicle ahead
- 4. Following distance

Status display for HWA



When HWA is not activated, no target vehicle ahead is detected.



When HWA is activated, no target vehicle ahead is detected.



When HWA is not activated, a target vehicle appears ahead.



The subject vehicle is very close to the target vehicle in front. The safety distance is not respected.



HWA is active and a target is selected within a safe distance.

⚠ Warning!

You must maintain an appropriate speed and a safe distance, and take braking actions in a timely manner if necessary.

Activating HWA



Left multi-function button

- Press and release the left multi-function button rightward to switch to the HWA function, at this time the icon is displayed in white, and the HWA enters ready mode.
- 2. Press the left multi-function button to activate the HWA function, at this time the icon is displayed in blue.

When the high and fast road assist function is switched on, only the adaptive cruise capability can be switched on, with no steering assist, if the following conditions occur, (**) icon steering wheel in blue, lane lines in white:

■ The turn signals are illuminated.

- Vehicle on the line, vehicle not in the lane or body at too great an angle to the centre line of the lane.
- The steering wheel steers to a certain strength.
- Driveways are too narrow or too wide.
- Lane lines are not recognised for long periods of time.

Adjusting HWA

To set target vehicle speed and following distance for HWA, please refer to **Adjusting ACC** (p.226).

Disable HWA



Left multi-function button

By pressing the left multi-function button or depressing the brake pedal, the HWA will be temporarily deactivated, at this time the local turns white, and HWA enters ready mode.

If the following situations occur, HWA will temporarily disable the steering assist with an acoustic warning and only maintain the ACC:

- You take over the steering wheel and turn to a certain force.
- Drive across the line to a certain width and for a certain duration.
- The lane is too narrow or the lane line cannot be recognized for a long time.

If the following situations occur, HWA will automatically exit:

- The wipers are at the highest level.
- Any one of the doors, bonnet and tailgate is opened.
- The driver seat belt is unfastened.
- The wheels lose grip.
- There is a system fault (such as camera, radar, brake, steering, etc.).
- The EPB is activated.
- The accelerator pedal is depressed to accelerate for more than 3min or the speed exceeds 155km/h.
- The ESC is deactivated or malfunctioning.
- The gear lever is disengaged from drive (D) gear.

- The front windscreen or the front radar area is covered by dust, rain, frost, snow or other dirt.
- The driving mode is switched to track mode.
- The trailer mode is activated.
- Triggering of the AEB.
- Triggering of the ABS.

The function cannot be activated when any of the above conditions are not met, and there is a prompt at this time.

⚠ Warning!

After HWA is deactivated, you must take over control of your car to ensure the driving safety.

Recovering HWA



Left multi-function button

When the HWA enters ready mode. Scroll up the left multi-function button, the HWA will be reactivated, and the left multi-function button, the HWA will be reactivated.

Limitations of HWA

HWA may not work properly when any of the following conditions or road environments occur:

- Roads with invisible lane lines.
- Roads with forks.
- Roads with vehicle imprints, such as tyre tracks.
- Roads with a large deviation between the original lane and the new lane.

- Roads with potholes, bumps, undulating pavement.
- Roads under construction
- Roads that are too wide and too narrow.
- Roads where the lane lines are not straight.
- Roads with too small curves (such as ramps, hilly loop, etc.).
- Crossroads or fork in the road.
- Roads with damaged or unclear lane lines.
- The driver actively controls the vehicle.

Forward drive assist

Autonomous emergency braking (AEB)

The autonomous emergency braking (AEB) alerts driver to pedestrians, cyclists, and vehicles through audible and visible alarms. When the driver fails to react to the warning signal from the forward collision warning and the situation continues to deteriorate, or when the driver presses the brake pedal but the braking force is insufficient, the AEB will intervene in time to apply limited braking to the vehicle, reducing the speed of the vehicle by a maximum of 60km/h in order to mitigate the consequences of the accident.

The following conditions must be met for AEB to function:

 The driver seat belt is fastened and the four doors (including the bonnet and the tailgate) are closed.

- AEB is enabled.
- The wipers are not at the highest level.

Due to the interference caused by external factors to the system, the system will inevitably have some false alarms.

AEB includes four systems to help avoid a forward collision. The four systems are described below and are: safety distance alarm, forward collision warning (FCW), dynamic bake support (DBS), and automatic emergency braking (AEB).

- Safety distance warning: the safety distance warning works in a non-emergency state. When the vehicle speed reaches 65km/h and above, the safety distance warning is used to prompt you that the following distance from the vehicle ahead is too short, and the driving behaviour should be adjusted to maintain a reasonable distance.
- FCW: if the system determines that there is a potential risk of collision with the vehicle running at 4~150km/h, it will alert you of the potential collision risk through the warning sound and the warning symbols on instrument cluster.
- DBS: when the vehicle is running at 4~90km/h and above, if there is a danger but the current braking force applied by you is too small, the system will assist you to increase the braking force to avoid or mitigate collisions.

 AEB: when the vehicle is running at 4~80km/h, if there is a danger but you does not apply effective braking, the system will intervene in time to apply AEB to avoid or mitigate collisions.
 The seat belt will be pre-tensioned to protect the driver.

$oldsymbol{\Lambda}$ Warning!

- These four systems provide an extra measure of safety, but they are installed only to assist the driver. These four systems should not be solely relied upon or over-relied upon as they may not operate correctly under all driving, weather, traffic, or road conditions (for example, they may not recognize a large truck in front of you). These systems are not a substitute for the driver maintaining complete control of the vehicle at all times, watching the road with hands on the steering wheel ready to take action and brake, closely paying attention to the task of driving, and driving in a careful and responsible manner.
- No driving assist system can function 100% under all circumstances. Therefore, you should never drive the vehicle towards pedestrians or objects for the purpose of testing the performance of AEB.
- AEB is a driver assistance system. You should always maintain an appropriate speed and distance from the vehicle ahead, and not wait for the issuance of FCW signals or for intervention of AEB.

- AEB cannot be used properly in all driving, traffic, weather or road conditions.
- For effective targets identified by the system, depending on the vehicle, the scenario and the road conditions, AEB cannot always assist you to avoid or mitigate collisions.
- This function will not be activated at a lower vehicle speed. Similarly, this system will not apply a brake when the subject vehicle is approaching the vehicle or pedestrian ahead at a lower speed.
- AEB does not respond to the following objects: including but not limited to road obstacles (e.g., road cones, water-filled barriers), walls, traffic lights.
- Even if HWA or ACC is activated, the driver always has the responsibility to keep an eye on the real-time traffic conditions.
 AEB cannot ensure the avoidance or mitigation of a collision in real time.
- When the current maximum braking force is applied through AEB, the vehicle speed can be reduced by 60km/h to avoid or mitigate a collision. For example, when the AEB braking is triggered at a speed of 80km/h, the braking force cannot continue to decelerate after it drops to a maximum of 20km/h.
- When using the parking function, the low-speed AEB function will be suppressed.

Detect objects



- Vehicle ahead
- 2. Text warning signal

Status display for object detection



When the subject vehicle is too close to the front vehicle, the front vehicle turns yellow.



When subject vehicle is very close to the front vehicle, the front vehicle turns red.

If ACC or HWA are not enabled, the instrument cluster will not display the vehicle model but only indicates its colour in the middle of the upper edge.

The FCW warns you with audible and visual signals when the subject vehicle is about to collide with another vehicle or pedestrian ahead.

Status display for FCW



A car is detected in front.



A pedestrian is detected in front.



A cyclist is detected in front.

⚠ Warning!

You must maintain an appropriate speed and a safe distance, and take braking actions in time if necessary.

Setting AEB



You can tap the @ icon on the CSD and select **Safety** to access the AEB setting interface, where you can tap to turn on or off the AEB.

When the AEB fails, the indicator on the instrument cluster will be illuminated in yellow and the corresponding switch on the CSD will be greyed out and cannot be operated. When the AEB is turned off, the indicator on the instrument cluster will be illuminated in yellow.

The AEB will begin with a self-check when the vehicle is started, and during self-check, it will not work.

Limitations of AEB

AEB may not work well in the following situations, and it is recommended that you do not over-rely on it:

- Driving on slippery roads: the braking distance of the vehicle will be extended on slippery roads.
- Strong exterior lighting: strong sunlight, reflections and extreme light contrast may make it difficult for the driver to see the image alarm, and they may also affect the detection function of the front-view camera.
- Over-temperature in car: if the interior temperature is too high, the front-view camera may be temporarily disabled and the system may not issue an alarm.
- Reduced visibility in severe weather: heavy snow, blowing snow, rain, dense fog and dusty weather all have an impact on the windscreen and front bumper and may degrade system functions.
- Limited front-view camera/radar visibility: in some cases, the system may detect vehicles or pedestrians later than expected or fail to detect any person or object.

- Driver having strong initiative: if the driver actively manoeuvres/brakes the vehicle, the system may not react or react later than expected.
- During a turn or U-turn, the system may not respond or may respond with a delay compared to expectations.
- The road surface is uneven.
- There are metal interfering objects on the side of the road or on the roadside.
- System failure (such as camera, radar, braking, steering, etc.).

⚠ Warning!

- Before driving, the driver should learn the limitations of AEB.
- The driver should keep applying braking force in the event of a danger even AEB is in operation.
- When the driver actively manoeuvres/brakes the car, the system may not react or react later than expected.

Evasive maneuver assist (EMA)*

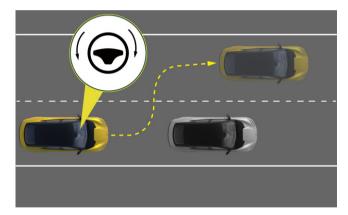
When the system detects that the driver operates the steering wheel to avoid an imminent collision but the steering force is insufficient, the evasive maneuver assist (EMA) will assist in avoidance by increasing the steering force.

If the driver intends to operate the steering wheel to return the car to its original lane after the obstacle is bypassed by increasing the steering force, evasive maneuver assist (EMA) will also assist in the returning.

① Note!

Evasive maneuver assist (EMA) will only work when the vehicle is running at a speed of $50\sim120$ km/h.

Interrupting evasive maneuver assist (EMA)



When evasive maneuver assist (EMA) is working to assist in obstacle avoidance, the driver can interrupt its operation by switching on the direction indicator lamps and depressing the accelerator pedal hard or turning the steering wheel reversely.

Evasive maneuver assist (EMA) does not work when any of the following systems is activated:

- Highway assist (HWA).
- Lane keep assist (LKA).
- The vehicle is in towing mode.

Limitations of evasive maneuver assist (EMA)

Objects that evasive maneuver assist (EMA) can detect include pedestrians, two-wheelers, vehicles (coaches, trucks, passenger cars).

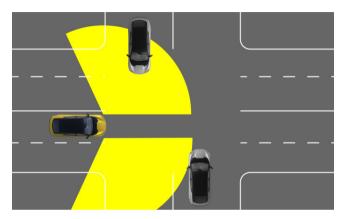
Evasive maneuver assist (EMA) may not work properly when any of the following conditions or road environments occur:

- Uneven road.
- Metal interference on the road or in the road.
- System misjudgement due to driver's operation.
- Slippery roads with water, snow or ice.
- Evasive maneuver assist (EMA) failure.

⚠ Warning!

Evasive maneuver assist (EMA) is only a driver assist system and cannot handle all emergency situations. The driver is required to pay attention, maintain a safe distance from other vehicles, comply with current laws and traffic regulations, and drive the car safely.

Front cross traffic assist (FCTA)



When you are driving out of the parking space or passing an intersection, if front cross traffic alert detects that there is a risk of side collision in the front, it will remind the driver to pay attention to the side oncoming vehicles.



- 1. Visual warning signal
- 2. Text warning signal

① Note!

If ACC or HWA is not enabled, the instrument cluster will not display the vehicle model but only a visual alarm on the left or right side of the upper edge.

When the system detects that there is a risk of colliding with crossing vehicles in the front, it will alert you to note crossing vehicles ahead through audible and visual signals.

All the following conditions must be met for front cross traffic alert to function:

- The speed of the target vehicle is 0~60km/h.
- The speed of the Self-vehicle is 4~60km/h.
- The driver fastens the seatbelt.
- The car is moving forward.

Due to the interference caused by external factors to the system, the system will inevitably have some false alarms.

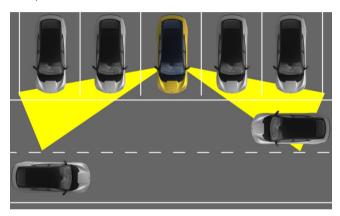
When the front cross traffic alert fails, the indicator on the instrument cluster is illuminated in yellow, the front cross traffic alert switch on the central display is gray and cannot be operated; when the front cross traffic alert is turned off, the indicator on the instrument cluster is illuminated in yellow.

① Note!

- When you are turning at a right angle or running through a Tintersection, the FCTA may issue an alarm if the turning speed of the target car is 4~60km/h.
- FCTA does not respond to the following objects: including but not limited to roadblocks (e.g., road cones, water-filled barriers), walls, traffic lights.

Limitations of front cross traffic alert

When the vehicle exits the parking space, radars on both sides may be blocked by surrounding vehicles and obstacles. In this case, front cross traffic alert may not detect the front crossing vehicles in a timely manner.



Front cross traffic alert will not work properly under any of the following conditions:

- Uneven road.
- Metal interference on the road or in the road.
- System misjudgement due to improper operation.
- Road with low adhesion due to water, snow or ice.
- There is a system fault (such as camera, radar, brake, steering, etc.).

Lane keeping assist (LKA)

LKA attempts to keep the vehicle in its own lane when the vehicle running on highway or main road is about to deviate from its own lane due to driver distraction or other circumstances.

The LKA consists of lane departure warning (LDW), lane departure prevention (LDP) and emergency lane keeping assist (ELKA).



When LKA works, the driver is required to hold the steering wheel with both hands at all times. When the LKA is activated for the first time and the system detects that the driver is not holding the steering wheel, no prompt message will appear on the instrument cluster. If the LKA is activated again in the next period of time, and the system detects that the driver is still not holding the steering

wheel, it will prompt "Keep hands on wheel" on the instrument cluster. At the same time, the takeover prompt tone is issued.

When the vehicle deviates from its own lane again, LKA will be enabled again.

LKA can identify lane lines, pedestrians, curbs, and oncoming traffic ahead/behind and calculate the distance of the subject vehicle to the left and right lane lines and the oncoming traffic ahead/behind when the car is running at 60~180km/h. When the car deviates from its lane or is leaving the lane, the system will alert the driver to keep the car in the lane by making a sound.

When the car deviates from the lane or is about to collide with a pedestrian or vehicle in the adjacent lane, the system will provide steering force to bring the car back into its own lane.

⚠ Warning!

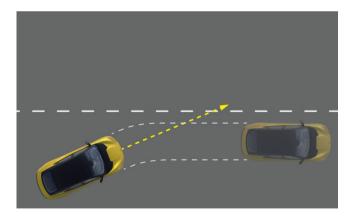
- LKA is only to assist you and it may not function properly in all driving, weather, traffic or road conditions.
- Do not use this function on urban streets, construction areas, narrow roads, or areas where cyclists or pedestrians may be present.
- LKA cannot guarantee collision avoidance. It is always your responsibility to drive the vehicle safely.

Please hold the steering wheel correctly to avoid triggering the release alarm by mistake.

Lane departure warning

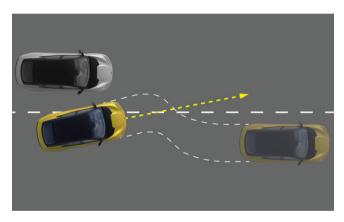
If you do not actively control the steering of the vehicle and the system detects that the vehicle is about to or has deviated from its own lane, the lane departure warning will remind you by generating a sound.

Lane departure prevention



If the driver does not actively control the steering of the car and the system detects that the car is approaching a lane line and there is a risk of deviation, the system will provide steering force to the steering wheel to bring the car back into its own lane. When the car continues to deviate from its own lane, the Lane departure warning system, if activated, will issue an alarm to alert the driver.

Emergency lane keeping assist



Emergency lane keeping assist will actively control the steering system to help the vehicle return to its current lane if the system detects that the vehicle is deviating from its own lane and the following conditions are imminent:

• The car is about to rush off the road or collide with the curb.

- Collision with an oncoming vehicle or a vehicle behind due to an unintentional departure from the lane.
- Collision with a pedestrian in the adjacent lane due to an unintentional departure from the lane.

⚠ Warning!

You should maintain attention and judgement at all times, ensure that the vehicle is in its own lane, and comply with current laws and traffic regulations.

① Note!

- Lane keeping assist may not work when you are driving on sharp bends or narrow roads.
- During normal driving, the lane keeping assist will not intervene
 or give a warning if the direction indicator lamps are switched
 on or the brake pedal is depressed.
- Lane keeping assist may be limited or unavailable when the electronic stability control (ESC) is malfunctioning, deactivated or intervening.



- 1. Lane keeping assist status indicator
- 2. Lane lines



No lane line is displayed if it is not detected by lane keeping assist.



When lane departure warning is active, the lane lines are displayed in red.



When lane keeping assist is working, the lane lines are displayed in blue.

Setting lane keeping assist



Click the @ icon on CSD and select **Safety** to enter lane keeping assist setting interface where the lane keep assist can be set.

You can also click on the 🗓 icon in the upper left corner of the central display screen to quickly open the **Safety** interface.

When the lane keeping assist fails, the indicator on the instrument cluster is illuminated in yellow, the lane keeping assist switch on the central display is gray and cannot be operated; when

the LKA is turned off, the indicator on the instrument cluster is illuminated in yellow.

Limitations of lane keeping assist

It is recommended that you do not rely too heavily on lane keeping assist as it may not work properly in the following situations:

- The lane lines are not clear.
- The speed of the car is not within the working range.
- The driver actively steers.
- System failure (such as camera, radar, braking, steering, etc.).

Automatic speed limit alarm (ASLA)

The automatic speed limit alarm (ASLA) obtains road traffic sign information such as speed limit signs through the front camera, map and navigation information, and prompts you of the current road sign information through the instrument cluster in real time. If the vehicle is driving at a speed above the speed limit of the current road, the system will give warning in time, so as to assist you in driving properly.

Automatic speed limit alarm is used to alert you to current speed limits on the road, and helps you to keep driving at the legally prescribed speed and comply with local traffic restrictions.

⚠ Warning!

- Drivers must always keep their attention and judgment, actively control the speed and drive safely, and abide by traffic rules.
- Any automatic speed limit alarm system indications and warnings are without prejudice to the actual speed limit applicable in a particular situation, the observation of which and compliance with remain ultimate responsibility of the driver.
- If the speed limit sign is not clear or is twisted, inclined, irregular, partially occluded or covered, etc., the identification ability of the front camera will be impaired, resulting in misidentification or failure to identify.

① Note!

- Generally, maps are automatically updated monthly via OTA updates.
- Maps are free to use for seven years, and the system works for 14 years.

① Note!

Automatic speed limit alarm can only identify traffic speed limit signs, and it is invalid for other traffic signs.

After automatic speed limit alarm recognizes the speed limit sign on the road, it will be displayed on the instrument cluster in the form of an icon.



- 1. Current speed
- 2. Speed limit sign on current road

When the automatic speed limit alarm fails, the automatic speed limit alarm switch on the central display is gray and cannot be operated.

① Note!

 Road sign information may not be displayed or be displayed inaccurately when the map data is incorrect, not updated, or inaccurately positioned.

- For other signs that are not standardized or not positioned as required, they may be recognized as speed limit signs/road signs, resulting in misidentification.
- The features of speed limit alarm/road sign recognition are affected by factors such as the field of view of the front camera, the relative position of the front camera and the speed limit/ road sign, etc., therefore the speed limit/road sign may be incorrectly identified or not identified.

Speed limit information identification



The alarm will be triggered when the vehicle speed exceeds the speed limit recognized by the system; The alarm will be released when the vehicle speed is below the speed limit recognized by the system until a new speed limit is detected.

⚠ Warning!

The speed limit alarm only has the function to remind the speed limit. The driver must actively control the speed and comply with current laws and traffic regulations.

① Note!

- The speed limit sign of the current road is recognized, and the speed limit value is displayed; in case of recognition failure, "---" will be displayed.
- Automatic speed limit alarm can automatically position the vehicle and automatically detect the country where the vehicle is located, but the driver still needs to actively set the speed UNIT (KILOMETERS and MILES)(p.306) according to the road speed limit sign in different countries, otherwise the speed limit alarm may not work normally.

Setting speed limit alarm



- 1. Automatic speed adjustment
- 2. Automatic speed limit alarm
- 3. Set speed limit alarm

You can click the icon on CSD as needed, and select **Safety** to enter the automatic speed limit alarm setting interface where you can set the speed limit alarm mode.

You can also click on the $^{\circ}$ icon in the upper left corner of the central display screen to quickly open the **Safety** interface.

You can also manually click to open the setted speed limit alarm, drag the slider to any position of the setted speed limit alarm slider to set the speed limit.

Automatic speed limit assist for cruising



- Current speed
- 2. Target speed
- 3. Speed limit sign on current road

With the ACC/HWA and fusion with speed-limit enabled simultaneously, if the speed limit sign on the current road is detected, and the target speed currently set by ACC/HWA is higher than the speed limit, the system will automatically adjust the target speed to the speed limit value; if the target speed is lower than the speed limit, no change will be made.

Limitations of Automatic speed limit alarm

Automatic speed limit alarm may fail to identify or inaccurately identify road signs in the following conditions:

- Irregular road sign.
- Faded logo.
- Sign on a curve.
- Rotated or damaged sign.
- Signs erected high above the highway.
- Signs that are completely/partially obscured or in a relatively obscure position.
- Signs that are fully or partially covered by frost, snow and/or dust.

Rear drive assist

Rear collision warning (RCW)

If the rear collision warning (RCW) detects a risk of rear-end collision when the car is driving at a speed within 0~150 km/h, it will alert the driver through audible and visual signals, and trigger the hazard warning lights to turn on, alerting the driver of the vehicle behind to brake.

① Note!

- The vehicle is at rest (non-trailer state) after starting. When the gear lever is in non-R gear and there is a rear collision risk and the collision cannot be avoided, when the vehicle is stationary, the system will request the vehicle to apply brake automatically to reduce the risk of the car slipping forward after being rearended and to avoid a secondary collision between the subject vehicle and the vehicle ahead.
- When the turn signal, hazard warning light, and emergency brake light are turned on, rear collision warning (RCW) will not be triggered to activate the hazard warning light.





When the following car is close to your car, the rear of your car turns yellow.



When the following car is very close to your car, the rear of your car turns red.



If the ACC or HWA are not enabled, the instrument cluster will not display the vehicle model but only indicates the corresponding colour in the middle of the lower edge.

If the RCW works in non-R gears and the vehicle does not slip backwards, then the following targets approaching from the rear can be detected:

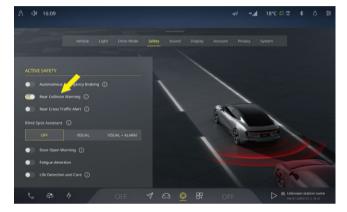
- Bicycles.
- Motor vehicles.
- Electro-mobiles or motorcycle.

RCW may not work when the vehicle is under any of the following conditions:

- In reverse (R) gear.
- In towing mode.
- The driver is not wearing a seat belt.

- ESC is deactivated.
- Any of the vehicle doors (including the bonnet and the tailgate) is not closed.

Setting RCW



You can tap the @ icon in the CSD, and select **Safety** to enter the RCW setting interface, where the RCW function can be activated or deactivated.

① Note!

When the RCW is malfunctioning or does not work properly, the lindicator will be illuminated.

Limitations of RCW

It is recommended that you should not rely too much on RCW, as it may not detect a target or work well in the following cases:

- Adverse weather such as snow, fog, etc. that affects the system and prevents the target from being detected.
- The target vehicle approaches after changing lanes from another one
- There is a system fault (such as camera, radar, brake, steering, etc.)

Blind spot detection (BSD)

The blind spot detection (BSD) covers blind spot areas as well as the area of rapid arrivals on the side and rear, helping the driver to be more alert to blind spots and vehicles coming from behind, especially when turning or changing lanes.



① Note!

If ACC and HWA are not enabled, the instrument cluster will not display the vehicle model.

BSD works when the car is driving at a speed within 15~150km/h.

When BSD is working, the BSD indicator on the outside mirror will be illuminated or flash, accompanied by an audible alarm, and a visual alarm signal will pop up on the instrument cluster.

If your vehicle is equipped with a streaming mirror, the blind spot monitoring indicator lights up or flashes on the streaming mirror display with an audible alarm while BSD is working.

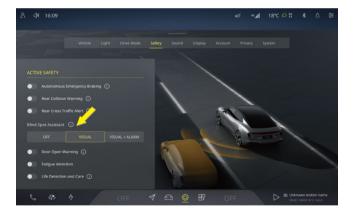
⚠ Warning!

Do not rely too much on BSD. To ensure the safety of lane change, you shall be vigilant and need to make good observations and judgements of the surroundings before changing lanes.

BSD may not work when the vehicle is under any of the following conditions:

- In reverse (R) gear.
- The vehicle is in towing mode or not driving.

Setting BSD



Click the icon in the CSD, and select **Safety** to enter the lane change safety and warning setting interface, where the BSD warning method can be selected.

① Note!

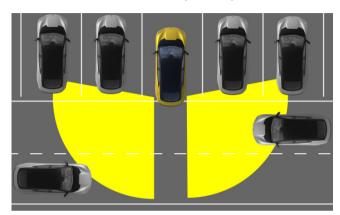
When the BSD is malfunctioning or does not work properly, the $\frac{64}{14}$ indicator will be illuminated.

Limitations of BSD

In any of the following cases, the BSD may not detect the target or work well, and it is recommended that you do not rely too much on the BSD:

- Adverse weather such as snow, fog, etc. that affects the system and prevents the target from being detected.
- The driver changes lanes without switching on the direction indicator lamp.
- The target is small or moving slowly or stationary.
- The car is making a sharp turn or in an open area.
- The target vehicle is approaching very quickly or very slowly.
- System failure (such as camera, radar, braking, steering, etc.).

Rear cross traffic alert (RCTA)



If there is a risk of a lateral collision at the time when the driver reverses from the parking space or garage, RCTA will alert the driver to notice the rear side of the vehicle and brake if necessary to avoid or mitigate a collision.



① Note!

- If the ACC or HWA are not enabled, the instrument cluster will not display the vehicle model but only a visual alarm on the left or right side of the lower edge.
- RCTA does not respond to the following objects: including but not limited to road obstacles (e.g., road cones, water-filled barriers), walls, traffic lights.

In addition to visual alarms on instrument cluster, the following alarm forms will also be presented to remind the driver of car coming from behind when the system detects that there is a risk of rear lateral collision:

■ The BSD indicator on outside mirror is illuminated.

• A hazard warning is shown on CSD.

If your vehicle is equipped with a streaming mirror, the blind spot monitoring indicator lights up or flashes on the streaming mirror display with an audible alarm while BSD is working.

The following conditions must be met for RCTA to function:

- The gear is shifted to N or R and the car speed is below 18km/h.
- The target car is running at 0~97km/h relative to your car.
- The driver fastens the seat belt and the four doors (including the bonnet and the tailgate) are closed.
- ESC is enabled.
- The vehicle is not in towing mode.
- RCTA is enabled.

⚠ Warning!

To ensure safe reversing, you have to look around and make sure your surroundings are safe before reversing.

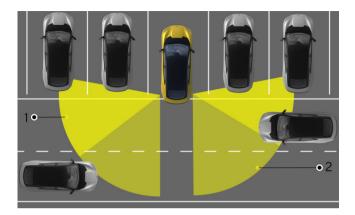
Setting RCTA



Click the icon in vehicle settings interface, and select **Safety** to enter RCTA setting interface, where you can turn on or off the RCTA.

Limitations of RCTA

When the car reverses from the parking space or the garage, radars on both sides may be blocked by surrounding cars and obstacles. In this case, RCTA may fail to detect the rear crossing cars in a timely manner.



- 1. Blind spot
- 2. Detected area

In any of the following cases, the RCTA may not detect the target or work well, and it is recommended that you do not rely too much on the RCTA:

- Adverse weather such as snow, fog, etc. that affects the system and prevents the target from being detected.
- System failure (such as camera, radar, braking, steering, etc.).

Door opening warning (DOW)

When the car is stationary or driving at a low speed, the DOW system detects the moving targets approaching from behind and the sides. When there is a potential risk of collision at the time

of door opening, the BSD indicator on the outside mirror will be illuminated or flash, accompanied by an audible alarm, to remind the driver and passengers that opening door may result in a risk of collision.

When the system predicts that there is a risk of collision at the time of opening the door, it will hinder the driver and passengers from using the door switch to open the doors, but the emergency handle can be used normally to open the door.

① Note!

If the door cannot be opened normally due to the system, you can use the emergency handle to open the door.

DOW sign



If DOW detects a target and there is a risk of collision when the door is being opened, the indicator on the outside mirror will be illuminated or flash, accompanied by an audible alarm, and images and text alarm signals will pop up on the instrument cluster.

If your vehicle is equipped with streaming mirrors, the blind spot monitoring indicator lights up or flashes on the streaming mirror display with an audible alarm.

① Note!

DOW starts to work after the vehicle is powered on; if DOW fails, the hindicator will be illuminated and relevant text prompts will be

shown on the instrument cluster. In this case, please contact Lotus retailer in time

Setting DOW



You can click the @ icon in the CSD, and select **Safety** to enter the DOW setting interface, where the DOW function can be activated or deactivated.

Limitations of DOW

DOW does not work when the vehicle is in towing mode.

In the following cases, the DOW may not detect a target or work well, and it is recommended that you do not rely too much on DOW:

- Adverse weather such as snow, fog, etc. that affects the system and prevents the target from being detected.
- Targets approaching from the side and rear of the car are moving too fast.
- The target is small or moving slowly or stationary.
- On sharp turns, downhill roads, quite narrow or wide lanes.
- System failure (such as camera, radar, braking, steering, etc.).

Brake assist system

Comfortable brake stop (CST)

Comfortable brake stop (CST) can provide a more comfortable braking experience when decelerating and stopping in non-emergency situations. During the process of lightly pressing the brake pedal, CST can reduce the forward tilt of the vehicle, making it smoother when decelerating and stopping.

- When the vehicle driving mode is in range mode, tour mode, or individual mode, the comfortable brake stop function is enabled by default.
- When the vehicle driving mode is in sport mode or track mode, the comfortable brake stop function is turned off by default.

Caution!

The comfortable brake stop function will slightly increase the braking distance, please reserve enough braking space in advance.

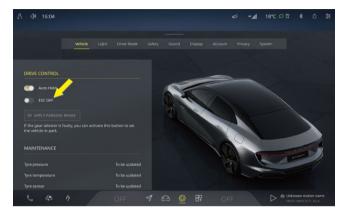
Electronic stability control (ESC)

The electronic stability control (ESC) can improve driving stability and safety by intervening the driving torque output or applying braking force to wheel ends when the vehicle is unstable.

⚠ Warning!

- ESC is an auxiliary system, which cannot handle all situations or road conditions. It is always the driver's responsibility to drive the car safely and comply with current laws and traffic regulations.
- Do not modify the suspensions of the vehicle. Otherwise, the ESC cannot function properly, and the manoeuvrability of the vehicle may be adversely affected.

Setting ESC



You can click the @ icon in the CSD and select **Vehicle** to enter the ESC setting interface, where you can click to turn ESC on or off.

⚠ Warning!

The stability control applied to the car will be reduced when ESC is deactivated.

① Note!

If the car gets stuck in snow, sand or other conditions, deactivating ESC can help the car get grip and traction. At this time, the gindicator on the instrument cluster will be illuminated.

Anti-locked braking system (ABS)

ABS can prevent the wheels from locking up when the driver is applying the maximum braking force. It improves the car's steering control in emergency braking situations under most road conditions.

⚠ Warning!

- On rough, gravel or snow-covered roads, the braking distance may be longer than on normal roads.
- ABS is a supplementary system, not capable of managing every circumstance or road condition. The driver is always responsible for driving safely and adhering to all traffic laws and regulations.

① Note!

- When triggering the ABS function during braking, the driver will feel a continuous "clucking" sound coming from the bonnet. This is a normal phenomenon caused by the operation of ABS, not a malfunction.
- In special working conditions (such as high-speed turns, sharp turns, etc.), you will feel a continuous "clucking" sound coming from the cabin, which is a normal phenomenon caused by the operation of vehicle stability related functions, rather than a malfunction.

Electronic brake-force distribution (EBD)

Electronic brake-force distribution (EBD) ensures good braking performance and stability of the vehicle under different load conditions by regulating the distribution of braking forces between front and rear wheels and controlling the slip of rear wheels.

Corner traction control (CTC)

Corner traction control (CTC) assists in controlling the vehicle to pass through a curve at high speed. When the inside wheels have a tendency to slip, CTC will apply the braking force to them, and increase the torque applied to the outside wheels through the differential, so as to improve the curve passing ability of the vehicle.

① Note!

When turning the vehicle under special working conditions, there may be a sound, which is a normal phenomenon.

Traction control system (TCS)

The traction control system (TCS) can intervene in the output torque of vehicle according to the degree of wheel slip, and assist the driver in controlling the vehicle to achieve a smooth start and improve the vehicle's driving ability and stability.

① Note!

TCS is a function that is enabled by default in ESC, and it will be activated when the car is accelerating and starting on a road with low adhesion or on a split road.

When the car is starting on a completely wet and slippery road, the indicator on the instrument cluster will flash if any of the wheels slips. TCS can reduce the torque output of the powertrain to reduce slip and allow the car to be started quickly.

When the car is starting on a split road with one side slippery, the indicator on the instrument cluster will flash if any of the wheels slips. TCS improves the car's drive ability and stability by applying braking force to tyres on the side with low adhesion.

If continuous operation of TCS leads to over-temperature of the brake discs, the TCS will be deactivated, and display corresponding text on the instrument cluster to remind you that the brake disc temperature is too high.

⚠ Warning!

 The driver should maintain attention and judgement at all times to ensure the driving safety and override the car when necessary. TCS is a supplementary system, not capable of managing every circumstance or road condition. The driver is always responsible for driving safely and adhering to all traffic laws and regulations.

Brake assist system (BAS)

The brake assist system (BAS) detects the speed at which you depress the brake pedal to determine whether it is an emergency braking situation. When you do not apply enough force to the brake pedal or the pedal travel is insufficient to provide sufficient braking force, the system may increase the brake pressure automatically.

① Note!

- The BAS will not work when the ESC fault indicator ?? remains on, in such a case please contact the Lotus retailer in time.
- BAS is a supplementary system, not capable of managing every circumstance or road condition. The driver is always responsible for driving safely and adhering to all traffic laws and regulations.

Anti roll-over program (ARP)

The anti roll-over protection (ARP) is an active safety system that keeps the vehicle stable by detecting its driving condition and applying braking force to the outside wheels before the vehicle loses stability.

⚠ Warning!

You should maintain attention at all times while driving to ensure the driving safety and override the vehicle when necessary.

① Note!

ARP is enabled by default in ESC to prevent the vehicle from rolling over due to your sharp turning of steering wheel When the ARP function is activated, the ESC MIL $\stackrel{\frown}{\Rightarrow}$ on the instrument cluster will flash.

Hill start assist (HSA)

The hill start assist (HSA) helps you prevent the vehicle from moving downhill when starting on a slope. HSA will keep the vehicle stationary on a slope for a short time (approximately 2s) after the brake pedal is released.

HSA is operational when the gear lever is set to drive (D) or reverse (R) position and the EPB is deactivated.

⚠ Warning!

HSA is not a substitute for the electronic parking brake (EPB).
 The driver should shift gear to Park (P) and enable the EPB when leaving the vehicle.

- If the vehicle starts to slip backwards, the brake pedal should be depressed immediately. HSA may not be able to prevent the vehicle from sliding down a steep ramp under all load conditions or all road conditions.
- When starting on a ramp, it is forbidden to press the brake pedal and the accelerator pedal simultaneously.

Lotus intelligent dynamic control (LIDC)

The Lotus intelligent dynamic control (LIDC) integrates the control information you provide to the vehicle while driving, detects the overall condition of the vehicle based on sensors, and comprehensively schedules various vehicle systems to enhance the manoeuvrability, stability and comfort of the vehicle.

① Note!

If your vehicle is equipped with active rear wheel steering, the LIDC can improve the steering agility and driving flexibility and reduce the turning radius of the vehicle in the following scenarios:

- When driving at medium or low speeds;
- When the vehicle is reversing at low speed.

When the vehicle is running at a high speed, the LIDC can keep the vehicle moving stably before the ESC is activated. In this process, the control is smooth, thereby improving driving comfort.

Lotus intelligent roll-over control*

The lotus intelligent anti-roll control system monitors the movement of the vehicle in real time through the sensors arranged on the chassis and the body. The electronic active stabilizer bar provides greater roll support in the curve, reduces the roll angle of the body, and improves the grip of the vehicle in the curve. When a single wheel drives over a pit or a road, it can reduce the mutual influence when the left and right wheels jump up and down, reduce the impact of the road impact on the body, and improve the comfort.

When a fault alarm related to the lotus intelligent anti-roll control system is displayed on the instrument cluster, you are not allowed to drive on rough roads and turn at low speed. In this case, contact the Lotus retailer in time to eliminate the fault.

⚠ Warning!

- It is prohibited to remove and install relevant components of the suspension controller without permission.
- Do not place any magnetic objects near the electric active antiroll bar system to prevent damage to it.

Electrical pad wear indicator (EPWI)

The EPWI is used to detect the wear condition of the friction pads. When the friction pads are worn to the limit or the sensor is short-circuited, there will be a text prompt displayed on the instrument cluster and the fault lamp will be illuminated, accompanied by an audible alarm.

The tyres must be removed periodically for a visual inspection of the brakes. For detailed specifications and usage restrictions on brake discs and pads, please refer to **Braking parameters** (p.396).

Caution!

Failure to replace worn brake pads can damage the braking system and result in brake failure.

Alarm status	Fault lamp
The front friction pads are worn to the limit	
The rear friction linings are worn to the limit	
The front friction pad alarm is short circuited	
The rear friction pad alarm is short circuited	

The text prompt and fault light alarm will remain until the fault is removed. The audible alarm will stop when a malfunction occurs or when the power is turned on and the alarm is triggered several times

The EPWI does not work when the vehicle is in the following conditions:

- The vehicle speed is less than 10 km/h.
- FPR is activated
- Any braking behaviour.

⚠ Warning!

- The warning appears or disappears within a period after the fault is occurred or removed.
- When a warning occurs, the driver must decelerate and stop the car safely as soon as possible, and confirm that the fault has been removed before continuing to drive the car.
- If the friction pads reach the wear limit, the friction pads must be replaced. Replacing friction pads requires disassembling some parts and requires certain professional skills. Incorrect installation may affect brake performance and even cause accidents. Please contact the Lotus retailer to check or replace.

① Note!

 It is recommended that you regularly drive your vehicle to Lotus retailer for inspection or replacement of brake pads and

- brake discs. If you encounter any problem during driving, please contact Lotus retailer as long as you can ensure your safety.
- Please check the brake pads on both sides of the front or rear wheels at the same time, as the warning does not distinguish between the left and right wheels.
- Due to the use of friction lining material for sport model, brake noise may occur at certain speeds, braking forces and environmental conditions, but the braking performance will not be affected and the vehicle will still drive normally. If you want to understand the vehicle condition further, please contact Lotus retailer.
- Compared with traditional cast iron discs, the carbon ceramic brake discs adopt the different moulding process, thus absorbing water vapour more easily. After the vehicle wades through the water, or is washed or stored in a humid environment for a long time, the brake discs will be covered with water film on its surface. In this case, please brake hard a few times to remove the water film on the surface of the discs and restore the braking performance.

Post impact control (PIC)

The post impact control (PIC) can automatically control the vehicle to stop or reduce its speed after the impact, avoiding or mitigating the risk of subsequent impacts.

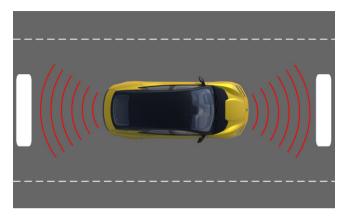
① Note!

When PIC is working, you may hear a continuous sound like rattle from the bonnet, and also feel a vibration from the brake pedal. This is a normal phenomenon caused by the operation of ESC, not a malfunction.

Park assist system

Parking assist (PA)*

When the vehicle is running at a speed of 0~15km/h, the parking assist (PA) can detect and warn of obstacles in the front and rear sides of the vehicle, and alert you of the risk of collision through audible and visual warnings.



The PA system includes parking assist front (PAF) and parking assist rear (PAR), and all of the following conditions need to be met for the system to work:

- The vehicle is powered on.
- The gear is not in P.
- PAF and PAR are turned on.

⚠ Warning!

For safety reasons, drivers shall remain vigilant all the time and always check vehicle surroundings.

The functionality of the ultrasonic sensor can become limited under the following conditions, and messages such as "ultrasonic radar is limited". "please remove the coverings of the front parking radar". "please remove the coverings of the rear parking radar" may appear, due to (but not limited to) the following reasons:

- One or more ultrasonic sensors are limited, misaligned, or obscured (e.g., by sludge, snow, ice, or car cover).
- Under bad weather such as rain, snow, fog, and haze.
- The sensor is affected by other electrical equipment or devices that can cause interference.

Ultrasonic sensors may fail to detect irregularly shaped obstacles, low obstacles, obstacles made of special materials, etc. In this regard, you should always focus on the surroundings. Otherwise, it may cause property damage or personal injury. These obstacles include but are not limited to:

- Pedestrians, children, or animals.
- Open ground locks, low stone piers, cylinders, thin rods, sharp objects, potholes in the ground, etc.
- Height-limited doors, rods or suspended structures.
- Obstacles at the side of the body that can cause collisions and scratches.
- Bicycles, corners, square columns and corners of parking lot, plastic foam, snowdrifts, etc.

① Note!

- When the ultrasonic radar is dirty or obstructed, please clean or remove the cover in time.
- When any ultrasonic radar sensor fails, the PDC will be invalid and a text prompt will appear on the parking interface.

Limitations of parking assist system

Parking assist system may not work properly in the following situations:

- The car is on a steep slope.
- One or more ultrasonic sensors are dirty or blocked.
- In extreme weather conditions when one of the ultrasonic sensors might become temporarily blocked.
- External interference from electrical equipment or devices.

Visual parking assist (VPA)

VPA captures vehicle surroundings through park assist cameras and displays the detected information on the CSD in order to provide a panoramic view of the vehicle to the driver.

Click the \square icon on the CSD to select the **Parking** APP and enter the VPA interface. On the VPA interface, slide down or click on the

parking app again to exit. When in R gear, you cannot manually turn off the VPA function

⚠ Warning!

- VPA is an auxiliary function, and the driver shall constantly pay attention to vehicle surroundings.
- The distance from the person/object/obstruction to the vehicle shown on the CSD may be closer than the actual distance.

The normal operation of VPA depends on the surround view camera sensor. The function might have limited functionality under the following circumstances:

- The camera mounting position is changed, or the camera is blocked or stained, out of focus, faulty, etc.
- The surroundings are dim, such as at dawn, dusk, night, in tunnels, or under large shadows cast by buildings, scenery or large vehicles.
- The brightness of the surroundings suddenly changes, such as at tunnel entrances or exits.
- The sun shines obliquely or directly on the camera.
- Under bad weather such as rain, snow, fog, and haze.

① Note!

■ When any parking assist camera fails, a red triangle warning symbol will appear on the VPA interface.

- The VPA will be automatically enabled when the R gear is engaged. In P gear, after a period of time VPA will be automatically closed.
- The VPA can be activated as long as the vehicle speed stays below 20km/h.
- Dynamic effect of blind spot filling is observed around the model as indicated by VPA, and there is actually a 30cm blind spot. Thus, VPA cannot take place of visual inspection. You must always focus on traffic conditions and the road environment and drive the vehicle when it is safe to do so.

View switching



. Panoramic image view

- 2. Automatic parking view
- 3. Setting switch

Setting VPA



- 1. Smart obstacle trigger
- 2. Trajectory lines
- 3. Warning Volume

① Note!

When the VPA is activated by an obstacle trigger, you can slide down to deactivate the VPA, and the obstacle trigger function will be disabled. The VPA will not pop up again until the vehicle speed exceeds 20km/h.

When the smart obstacle trigger is enabled, if you encounter obstacles in a close distance, the parking camera interface will automatically pop up.

When the trajectory lines is enabled, the trajectory lines generated on the CSD will simulate the projection of the vehicle on the ground. With the trajectory, you can view the path that the vehicle will pass through. The system will adjust the trajectory accordingly as the steering wheel is turned.

When obstacle marking is enabled, detected obstacles appearing in the panoramic view will be marked and a warning sound will be triggered if they get too close. You can turn off the warning sound or set the warning sound level to high, medium or low.

Autonomous parking assist (APA)*

The autonomous parking assist (APA) can identify the surrounding environment, automatically search for parking spaces around the vehicle, and prompt you to park when an available parking space is found. You can follow the system prompts after stopping the vehicle, so that APA can control the steering, speed and gear of the vehicle, and automatically drive the vehicle into the selected parking space.

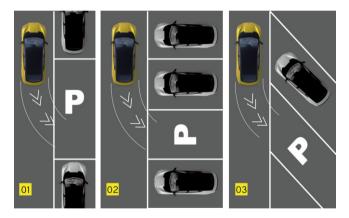
⚠ Warning!

- Even when APA is activated, the driver shall always be responsible to intervene actively and override the vehicle as necessary.
- Do not use APA on sloped or potholed roads.
- The performance of APA depends on the capability of the environmental camera and ultrasonic sensor to detect and identify the environment. When using the environmental camera and ultrasonic sensor, check if they are damaged or in an abnormal installation position. The left and right surround view cameras are mounted on the outside wing mirrors, thus you should check whether the outside wing mirrors are deployed and in the correct position. In case that any of the left/right outside wing mirrors, surround view cameras and ultrasonic sensors is damaged or in an abnormal position, do not use APA.
- Check whether there are pedestrians, children, animals, and other thin, pointed, low, suspended obstacles (e.g., ground locks, low stone piers, road cones, thin poles, sharp objects, wall corners, square columns, steps and corners of parking lot) that may affect the detection of the ultrasonic sensors around the vehicle.
- As a driving assist function, APA cannot deal with all traffic, weather, road and light conditions. You must always focus on

traffic conditions and the road environment and decide whether to use this function under the premise of ensuring safety.

If you find that it is better not to use APA under current traffic conditions or there are other unsafe factors, you shall always be prepared to take over the vehicle. Remember that you are ultimately responsible for the safe parking.

APA can support three kinds of parking spaces: parallel, vertical, and inclined.



During the autonomous parking, the vehicle can be overridden by any of the following ways:

- Active shifting.
- Operating the steering wheel to turn.

Autonomous park-in

- Click on the icon on the central display screen, select the Parking APP, click on the icon in the view interface to enter the parking space search mode.
- 2. Drive your vehicle to search for an available parking space.



If an available parking space is found, depress the brake pedal to stop the vehicle and tap the IN CAR button.



4. Follow the instructions to release the brake pedal and steering wheel, and start to automatically drive into the parking space.



5. When the autonomous parking is completed, the CSD will show that the parking is completed.



⚠ Warning!

- Always observe your surroundings and follow APA's instructions.
- Before autonomous park-in, be sure to confirm the identified parking space.

① Note!

When multiple parking spaces are found, the system will recommend the optimal parking space. If the originally recommended parking space is occupied by obstacles, the system will automatically recommend other parking spaces for you. You can also choose the parking space you need independently. Before parking, please ensure that the parking space is not occupied by obstacles to avoid parking interruption due to obstacles during the parking process.

- In the process of parking, when there are obstacles on both sides, in order to ensure safety, the speed of the vehicle will be appropriately reduced, if one side of the obstacle (such as a square column) is too close to the parking line, the parking target parking position will be appropriately offset to avoid scratching.
- APA is not effective in all situations and it is only used to provide assist in parking into parallel, inclined or vertical spaces.
- After the autonomous park-in is completed, you may need to adjust the vehicle' position further to ensure proper parking.

Limitations of APA

APA will be terminated and exited forcedly when any of the following conditions occur, at this time, the driver must take over control of the vehicle:

- The parking space is too small.
- Speeding or overtime at parking.
- The camera is blocked or the sensor is disturbed.

① Note!

- If the vehicle is parked in a space close to the kerb by APA, the running path set by the APA may exceed the curb, so the driver needs to shift gears according to the actual situation to prevent the raised road shoulder from damaging the tyres or wheels.
- Using non-original tyres or incorrect inflation pressure may affect the performance of APA.

The APA may not work as expected in the following road conditions (including but not limited to):

- The road surface is uneven or has steps; In this condition, do not use APA. APA is only available on flat roads.
- If the curb material is special or cannot be detected, the tire rim of the vehicle will be at risk of being damaged by the curb, please take over the vehicle in a timely manner.

When the functionality of the ultrasonic sensor(s) is limited, it may cause the APA to become inoperative or not operate as expected in the following conditions (including but not limited to):

- One or more ultrasonic sensors are damaged, misaligned, or obscured (e.g., by mud, snow or ice).
- The performance of ultrasonic sensors is affected by rain, snow, fog, haze and other bad weathers.
- The sensor is affected by other electrical equipment or devices that can cause interference.

The recognition capability of surround view cameras is limited and this may cause the APA to be inoperative or not to work as expected in the following conditions (including but not limited to):

- The left/right outside wing mirror or the front/rear of vehicle is damaged, causing the surround view camera to be positioned abnormally.
- The surround view camera is stained (e.g., by mud, snow or ice) or blocked.
- Under strong sunlight or in the shadow of mottled trees.
- The ground is reflective or has accumulated water.
- The parking space is in unconventional size (too narrow or too wide) or paved with floor tiles.
- When the contrast between the parking space line and the ground is low.

Others:

- If there is a trailer attached to the rear of the vehicle, do not use APA.
- If the vehicle is fitted with snow chains or spare wheels, do not use APA.
- If the loaded object protrudes from the vehicle, do not use APA.

Remote parking assist (RPA)*

The remote parking assist (RPA) enables the vehicle to be driven into a parking space automatically through the control from the mobile APP after the APA recognizes an available parking space.

⚠ Warning!

When using RPA, always ensure that the vehicle is within the visual range and keep observing the surroundings of the vehicle. If there is a safety risk, you should release the auto park-in button on the mobile APP in time to stop the vehicle.

Using the features of RPA requires the mobile phone to be bluetooth enabled and in range of connection.

① Note!

- RPA function is effective within 6m. However, due to the restrictions of bluetooth signal, you may need to use it close to the vehicle.
- RPA will automatically exit after a long pause.

Park-in with RPA

1. Click on the 🛱 icon on the central display screen, select the **Parking** APP, click on the 🖸 icon in the view interface to enter the parking space search mode.

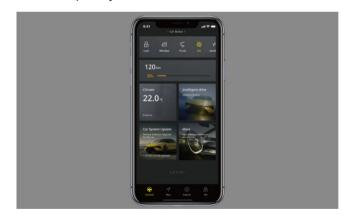
2. Drive your car to search for an available parking space.



3. When an available parking space is detected, depress the brake pedal to stop the car stably. The driver can get out of the car with valid key and phone carried after clicking the REMOTE PARKING button and hanging into P gear.



4. Open the mobile APP outside the vehicle, select **More**, and clik the **Remote parking** button.



By holding the Long press to park button, the vehicle will be driven into the parking space automatically. After the park-in is completed, the vehicle will be powered off automatically and locked.



① Note!

When multiple parking spaces are found, the system will recommend the optimal parking space. If the originally recommended parking space is occupied by obstacles, the system will automatically recommend other parking spaces for you. You can also choose the parking space you need independently. Before parking, please ensure that the parking space is not occupied by obstacles to avoid parking interruption due to obstacles during the parking process. When the car is automatically moving into the parking space, you need to press and hold the Long press to park button. If the button is released, the car will stop moving.

Limitations of RPA

RPA is an extension of APA and has the same limitations as those of APA (p.271). The precautions and limitations of APA also apply to RPA.

Driver fatigue detection



Driver fatigue detection camera

The driver monitoring system tracks the driver's condition using the driver monitoring system camera. If the system determines that the driver is experiencing fatigue at speeds over 10km/h, messages will appear on the instrument panel, and the lane keeping assist (LKA) and automatic emergency braking (AEB), if not already active, will be enabled until the driver is alert again. A notification card appears on the CSD to warn the driver and promote driving safety.



⚠ Warning!

- Driver fatigue detection is an auxiliary system and cannot actively intervene in driving operations. You must always maintain attention and take active control of the car.
- Never drive when you feel fatigued. You must always maintain healthy and awake while driving.

Do not ignore the warning given by the driver fatigue detection.
 After the system issues a fatigue driving warning, you should adjust driving behaviour or stop for a rest in time.

① Note!

- According to the driver's actual status, the driver fatigue detection activates the fatigue alarm when the driver's eyes are keeping closed or excessive blinking for a period of time.
- When the driver's eyes are keeping closed or excessive blinking for a period of time, the autonomous emergency braking and lane departure warning functions will be activated automatically until the driver looks ahead.

Setting driver fatigue detection



Click the @ icon on CSD, and select **Safety** to switch to the setting interface, where you can click to turn **Fatigue detection** on or off.

① Note!

- The driver fatigue detection opened by default.
- When the driver fatigue detection camera is blocked or malfunctioning, will be illuminated and the driver status cannot be monitored.
- Driver fatigue detection does not work properly when the system does not properly monitor the driver's face. The driver needs to adjust the steering wheel or seat position correctly to

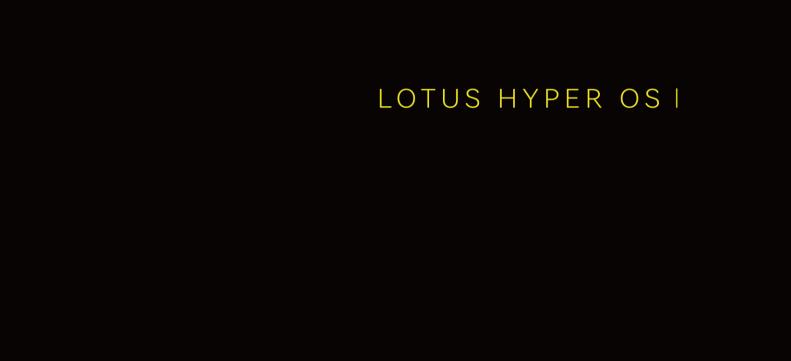
ensure that the driver fatigue detection camera is within your direct vision and the driver fatigue detection works properly.

Limitations of driver fatigue detection

The driver fatigue detection may not work properly in the following situations:

- Wear IR resistant sunglasses, masks or other accessories that will cover the face.
- There is intense lighting that reduces the monitoring capability of camera.
- System misjudgement due to your operation.
- There is a system fault (camera, radar, brake, steering, etc.)





Notes to users

This vehicle is equipped with IHU with various functions that can provide you with entertainment or driving assistance.

⚠ Warning!

When operating on the CSD interface, be sure to stop the vehicle in a safe place, and engage into P gear, otherwise a safety accident may occur.

L Caution!

- Do not operate on the CSD using sharp objects, as this will cause irreparable damage to the CSD.
- Do not modify or replace the IHU by yourself without permission to avoid damage to the system.
- If you notice any faults with the CSD, please contact the Lotus retailer in a timely manner.

① Note!

Due to the presence of a light sensor below the CSD, do not obstruct it to avoid affecting the normal use of the CSD.

Introduction to CSD gestures



Tap



Slide up



Slide down



Slide left



Slide right



Slide up and down



Zoom out with two fingers



Zoom in with two fingers



Press and hold

Restarting of CSD

To restart the CSD, you can follow the steps below:

 Turn the multi-function buttons on both sides of the steering wheel with both hands to the left and right simultaneously and hold them for a period of time to restart the CSD.



Restarting of CSD

 Unlock the vehicle after it is locked for a period of time to restart the CSD.

① Note!

When the CSD is stuck, unresponsive, disconnected or abnormal, you can restart it by the steps above.

Central screen display

Start-up guidance



When you activate the CSD for the first time or after it restores factory settings, you need to select the language, tick the appropriate items and then tap **NEXT** to set it up.



After scanning the QR code in the central screen display and successfully logging in, the system assumes that you have read and agreed to the "Lotus Head Unit Terminal User Service Agreement".

Desktop



- User centre
- 2. Quickly adjust the ADAS settings
- 3. Mute mode
- 4. Multifunctional panel
- 5. Time
- 6. Network
- 7. Temperature and air quality
- 8. Bluetooth
- 9. Notification center
- 10. Information cards

- 11. Mini player
- 12. Air conditioning
- 13. APP centre
- 14. Set up
- 15. Garage
- 16. Navigation
- 17. Quick application

Shortcut panel



Swipe down on the top of the centre display to open the shortcut panel. Tap the function tab to quickly turn on/off the corresponding

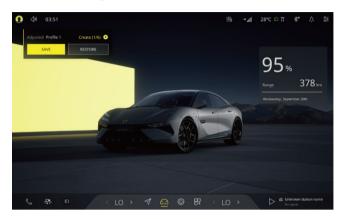
function or jump to the setting interface of the corresponding function.

Garage



- Vehicle lock switch
- 2. Panoramic sunroof adjustment switch*
- 3. Active rear spoiler switch*
- 4. Tailgate switch
- 5. Charging port cover switch
- 6. Door switch*

Vehicle use preference funciton



You can adjust the position of the seat, steering wheel, outside mirrors, and the height and brightness of the head-up display (HUD) according to your daily usage habits and actual usage requirements. Click **SAVE** to save the current adjusted configuration information to your current preference. To save or create preferences, you can click your profile picture in the upper left corner of the CSD to view and manage them.

Caution!

Do not obstruct the automatic adjustment of the seat, otherwise the seat may be damaged.

① Note!

During the automatic adjustment of the seat, if the seat position is manually adjusted, the automatic adjustment will be stopped.

Network settings

Wi-Fi network settings



Click the $\frac{\circ}{\circ\circ\circ}$ icon in the CSD to open the Wi-Fi setting interface. Enable the Wi-Fi network and activate the hotspot function in your phone, then you can find your phone's hotspot name in the **Networks Found** . Click connect, and the Wi-Fi network setting is completed.

Vehicle hotspot settings



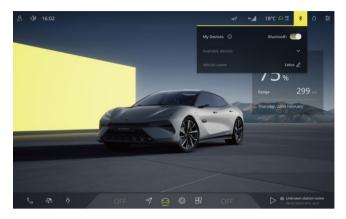
Click the occor icon in the CSD to open the vehicle hotspot setting interface. Enable the vehicle hotspot and enable the Wi-Fi connection of the mobile phone or other devices, then you can find the vehicle hotspot name on the mobile phone or other devices. Tap Connect, and the vehicle hotspot setting is successful.

Network reset



When the network status is poor, you can click the icon @ on the CSD, click **NETWORK RESET** on the **System** setting interface, and restart the vehicle system to reconnect to the network after a period of time.

Bluetooth settings



Tap the \$\\$ icon in the upper right corner of the CSD to open the Bluetooth setting interface. You can view and connect the available devices in the **Available devices**. After the connection is completed, the phone name will be displayed in the connected devices bar. You can tap to select the Bluetooth options you want to play (phone, music). You can also view and modify the vehicle name in the **Vehicle name**, find the vehicle name in the Bluetooth search bar on your phone, and pair and connect.

⚠ Warning!

Do not operate your phone in hazardous areas such as fuel storage areas and chemical stations.

Android Auto

Android Auto can be connected by means of wireless or wired connection to enjoy smartphone features such as music, navigation, voice assistant and phone calls on the vehicle.

Wireless connection

- 1. Android Auto can be connected wirelessly by Bluetooth pairing the smartphone through (p.288) as a bluetooth device first.
- After Bluetooth pairing is successful, a prompt for connecting Android Auto will pop up on the CSD. Click Start to complete the connection.



3. After Android Auto is connected, there will be a ♠ icon in the upper left corner of the CSD, and the ♠ icon in the device list will light up.



① Note!

You can click the \triangle icon in the device list for quick connection after the first successful connection.

If the Android Auto connection fails, you can try the following steps to connect again:

- Delete the phone information from the Bluetooth device list on the CSD.
- Delete the vehicle information through Setting More Connections - Android Auto on your Android Phone.
- 3. Refresh the Bluetooth device list and pair your device via Bluetooth again.

Wired connection

Connect the Android Phone to the left USB-C data transmission interface in the front armrest box via a data cable, and click Confirm on the phone to complete the connection.



① Note!

The pop-up on the phone is sued to agree to sharing contacts.

Disconnection

Click the \triangle icon in the device list on the CSD to disconnect Android Auto.



① Note!

Do not delete it on your Android Phone via **Android Auto**, otherwise Android Auto cannot be connected again.

Expanding/collapsing Android Auto

After Android Auto is connected, you can click the **A** icon in the upper left corner of the CSD to expand/collapse Android Auto.

① Note!

You can collapse Android Auto by sliding down. Both Android Auto and Apple CarPlay will run full screen in a short time due to an update.

Limitations of Android Auto

Android Auto, Apple CarPlay and Bluetooth are mutually exclusive.

- Only one screen projection application is supported at one time, and Android Auto and Apple CarPlay cannot be connected at the same time
- After Android Auto is connected, you can only connect another device's Bluetooth media.

Apple CarPlay

Apple CarPlay can be connected by means of wireless or wired connection to enjoy smartphone features such as music, navigation, Siri and phone calls on the vehicle.

Wireless connection

- Apple CarPlay can be connected wirelessly by Bluetooth pairing the smartphone through (p.288).
- After Bluetooth pairing is successful, a prompt for connecting Apple CarPlay will pop up on the CSD. Click connect Apple CarPlay, and click Agree on the smartphone to complete the connection.



3. After Apple CarPlay is connected, there will be a \odot icon in the upper right corner of the CSD, and the \odot icon in the device list will light up.



① Note!

You can click the ${\mathfrak E}$ icon in the device list for quick connection after the first successful connection.

If the Apple CarPlay connection fails, you can try the following steps to connect again:

- Delete the phone information from the Bluetooth device list on the CSD.
- 2. Delete the vehicle information through **Setting General - CarPlay** on your iPhone.
- 3. Refresh the Bluetooth device list and pair your device via Bluetooth again.

Wired connection

Connect the iPhone to the left USB-C data transmission interface in the front armrest box via a data cable, and click **Confirm** on the phone to complete the connection.



Description of Apple CarPlay function

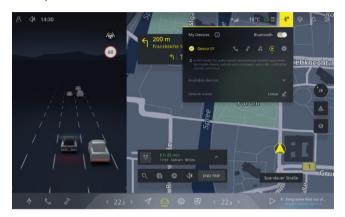
After Apple CarPlay is connected, you can activate Siri by saying "Hey Siri" or by holding the menu/voice button on the right side of the steering wheel.



Siri can only be used by the driver.

Disconnection

Click the $\ensuremath{\mathfrak{C}}$ icon in the device list on the CSD to disconnect Apple CarPlay.



① Note!

Do not delete it on your iPhone via **CarPlay**, otherwise Apple CarPlay cannot be connected again.

Expanding/collapsing Apple CarPlay

After Apple CarPlay is connected, you can expand/collapse Apple CarPlay in the following ways:

- Click the ⓒ icon in the upper left corner of the CSD to expand/collapse Apple CarPlay.
- Click the III icon on the CSD, and select **Apple CarPlay** to turn it on.

① Note!

You cannot collapse the Apple CarPlay sliding down.

Limitations of Apple CarPlay

Apple CarPlay, Android Auto and Bluetooth are mutually exclusive:

- Only one screen projection application is supported at one time, and Android Auto and Apple CarPlay cannot be connected at the same time.
- After Apple CarPlay is connected, you can only connect another device's Bluetooth media.

Application management



- Deactivation area: swipe down to close the application management interface.
- 2. Application: press and hold the application icon and drag to sort. If there is a new version of the application, tap the update button on the icon to update the application.

Tap the \blacksquare icon on the CSD to open the application management interface. Tap the application icon on the application management interface to open the corresponding application.

① Note!

If no action is taken on the CSD for a period of time, the system application interface will be deactivated automatically.

Multimedia

You can activate the multimedia interface in the application management interface.



- 1. Radio
- 2. USB-C playback
- 3. Bluetooth playback
- 4. Online multimedia

5. Sound settings

Radio

Tap the $\overline{\overline{a}}$ icon on the radio interface to search and automatically play the radio station found. Tap the radio channel or play icon to turn on or off playback.

You can tap the \heartsuit icon corresponding to the radio channel to favourite the channel, and the favourited channel will be saved in the favourites list.

In areas with DAB channel coverage, you can select FM or DAB radio stations by sliding up or down in the **STATION LIST** .



Bluetooth playback

After your mobile phone is connected to the vehicle via Bluetooth, you can open the Bluetooth playback interface to play the songs in your mobile phone.

USB-C playback

When an USB-C disk is connected to the vehicle USB-C interface, the songs in the USB-C disk can be played by opening the USB-C playback interface.

Sound

Equalizer tuning



You can click on the icon through CSD, select **Sound**. In clear original sound mode, you can turn on or off the sound customisation function. After turning on the equalizer sound effect, you can click **EQUALIZER** to enter the equalizer tuning interface.

In this interface, the bass, midrange and treble frequency bands can be adjusted according to personal listening habits, and each frequency band has three stages of positive and negative to choose from. In the bass section, the variation amplitude of each stage is 2 dB; The midrange and treble segments vary by 1 dB per order.

The vehicle's CSD/RSD screen can be adjusted synchronously, and the adjusted scheme will be memorized.

Equalizer tuning is not possible in **STAGE** mode and **SPATIAL** mode.

Decrease media volume while doors open

You can click the icon on the central display screen, select Sound, and in this interface, click to turn on or off the Decrease media volume while doors open function.

This function prevents the media volume from being too loud and disturbing pedestrians around when the door is opened.

When multimedia is playing, if any vehicle door is opened, the system will lower the media volume. When all doors are closed, the media volume will resume. During the period when the system lowers the media volume, if you manually adjust the media volume, the system will prioritize the volume you adjusted.

Voice

The car is equipped with Lotus personal assistant, by which you can control the activation and deactivation of some functions of vehicle.



To wake up the voice function, you can say the wake-up words ("Hi, Lotus" or "Hello, Lotus" by default) or press the voice button on the right side of the steering wheel. When the voice function responds to your wake-up, a voice broadcast bubble will appear in the CSD.

Here are some of the voice demonstrations:

Function classification	Desired function	Dialogue example
Basic function	Smart voice wake-up	Hi, Lotus Hello, Lotus
	Initiate navigation	Start navigation
	Inquire about your location	Where am i?
Manination	Navigate to a point of interest	Drive/Navigate to [location]
Navigation	Cancel navigation	Cancel navigation
	Display nearby charging stations	Show nearby charging station
	Go to frequently visited places	Drive home/to office
	Turn on/off front A/C	Turn on/off A/C
Climate controls	Adjust the	Increase/Decrease temperature
	temperature	Set the temperatur to 26°C
	Turn on/off rear A/C	Turn on/off rear A/C

Function classification	Desired function	Dialogue example
	Adjust the air volume	Increase/Decrease fan speed
	Adjust the all volume	Set the tempo/fan speed to 5th gear
	Turn on/off seat heating	Turn on/off seat heating
	Turn on/off seat ventilation	Turn on/off seat ventilation
	Turn on/off steering wheel heating	Turn on/off steering wheel heating
	Call a contact	Call [contact name/ phone number]
	View contact list	Open contact list
	View recent calls list	Open recent calls list
Phone	text	Send a messsage to [contact name/phone number]
	Turn on the Bluetooth phone	Turn on the Bluetooth phone Turn on the phone

Function classification	Desired function	Dialogue example
	Play/pause radio	Play/pause radio
	Play the designated radio station	Play [radio station name]
Media	Play/pause music	Play/pause music
	Switch music	Previous/next song
	Switch music source	Play bluetooth-/ USB-/online music
	Adjust the volume Mute/unmute	Increase/decrease volume
		Set the volume to 20
		Mute/unmute
System settings	Turn on/off head-up display	Turn on/off HUD
	Adjust the brightness of the central control screen	Increase/decrease brightness
	Trun on WiFi/ bluetooth	Trun on WiFi/ bluetooth

Function classification	Desired function	Dialogue example
	Adjust navigation volume	Incease/decrease navigation volume
	Adjust the voice assistant volume	Incease/decrease voice assistant volume
	Mute/unmute voice guidance	Mute/unmute voice guidance
	Inquire about the time at a certain location	What time is it in [location]
	Inquire about the day of the week at a certain location	What day is it today in [location]?
	Inquire about the weather at a certain location	How is the weather in [location]?
	Open/close all windows	Open/close all windows
Vehicle controls	Open front left/right window	Open front left/right window
	Open/close trunk	Open/close trunk
	Turn on/off the ambient lighting	Turn on/off the ambient lighting

Function classification	Desired function	Dialogue example
	Inquire about remaining range	How far can i drive?

⚠ Warning!

When controlling the vehicle by voice, it is important to pay attention to the surrounding environment and the occupants inside the vehicle to avoid accidental injuries.

Phone

Tap the ${}^{\zeta}$ icon on the **Application management** interface to activate the Bluetooth phone interface.



Once the phone is connected to the vehicle via Bluetooth, communication can be carried out via the Bluetooth phone.



When you make a call, the relevant information of the call and operation will be displayed on the left side of the CSD.

⚠ Warning!

- Do not use mobile phones in areas of high explosion risk.
 Otherwise, sparks may generate, which could cause a fire or explosion.
- Be sure to operate this function when road conditions permit or the vehicle is stationary.

Answering/hanging up/rejecting Bluetooth calls via buttons on steering wheel

When you receive a call reminder on the CSD, you can answer/hang up/reject the Bluetooth calls via the multifunction buttons on the right side of the steering wheel.

- To answer a Bluetooth call, you can press the middle button of the multifunction button on the right side of the steering wheel.
- To hang up a Bluetooth call, you can press the middle button of the multifunction button on the right side of the steering wheel twice continuously.
- To reject a Bluetooth call, first press the right button of the multifunction button on the right side of the steering wheel, and then press the middle button.



- 1. Left button of right multi-function button
- 2. Middle button of right multi-function button
- 3. Right button of right multi-function button

Navigation

This vehicle is equipped with HERE maps, which can provide navigation service for your travel.



This function can only be used when the network is connected.

Overview of navigation interface



- Springboard: you can set or search for different destinations on springboard.
- 2. Search icon: open the springboard.
- 3. Traffic information.
- 4. Navigation settings.
- 5. Voice prompt mute/unmute.
- 6. Re-center: tap to return to the current position.
- 7. View switch: switch between 3D view, 2D view, and 2D north up view.
- 8. Click to see range on map.
- 9. Switch between standard map and satellite map.

Route planning



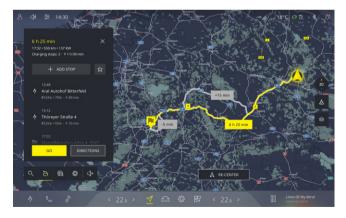
You can set or search for different destinations through springboard.

- 1. You can enter keywords in the search bar.
- Point of interest (POI): quickly search for different things nearby.
- 3. You can set your address, workplace, or favourite destinations to quickly navigate to them.
- Recent destinations displays the destinations you have recently navigated to.
- 5. Plan a trip: plan the route for you and save it.
- 6. Lotus: show you nearby Lotus dealerships or service stations.

When planning a route, the navigation system will provide information about the expected arrival time, total distance, and SOC upon arrival at the destination. You can also choose other routes.

In the EV route planning, the vehicle's travel power consumption is calculated according to Lotus Alpha-specific power consumption model. Charging stops required to reach the destination are automatically defined respective to the user's defined minimum SOC expectation at charge stops and at the destination. If the consumption pattern changes or a waypoint or the destination cannot be reached with the remaining charge, additional charge stops are automatically added by the application.

You can click on **Settings** - **Route planning** - **Automatic charging** in the navigation interface and choose to turn this function on/off.



The range on the route can display the remaining range of the vehicle on the current driving route.

When switching to the map view mode, the range on the map can display the remaining range on the map.

The EV route planning algorithm considers the application priorities set by users and the central parameters set by Lotus. Every time the user turns on the view, the EV route planning will update the range on the map. When conditions change, the range on the route will be updated regularly and automatically.

This function & can be turned on by tapping the range icon on the map.



Navigation mode



During the navigation process, information such as turning information, estimated arrival time, remaining time, remaining distance, and traffic conditions will be displayed.

Pinch to zoom, swipe with two fingers up and down to tilt the map angle.



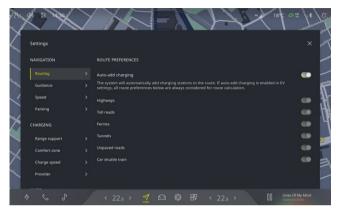
If desired, the intersection view can also be displayed.

You can click on **Settings** - **Wizard** - **Intersection view** in the navigation interface and choose to turn this function on/off.



When you arrive at your destination, the navigation system will provide you with the option to search for nearby parking spaces.

Navigation settings



Tap the "Settings" icon to enter the map settings interface.

- Modify the priority prompt for "Route", such as real-time traffic information.
- Adjust charging priorities, such as defining priority charging speeds or suppliers when searching for charging stations.
- Turn on the "Intersection view".
- Download maps for offline use.



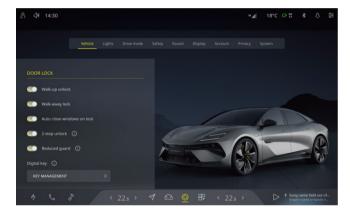
Offline map: the map data will be automatically updated when the network is connected.

① Note!

Offline maps can only be used online, unless the user previously downloads the maps.

Set up

Vehicle



This screen allows you to set door lock, sunroof transparency, drive control, and other functions.

Lights



This screen allows you to set up external and internal lighting.

Interior lights: the on/off, colour and brightness of the ambient lamps can be adjusted.

Exterior lights: adaptive light switch, tourist mode.

Drive mode



In this screen, you can set the driving mode, and in some driving modes, you can set the body height. The driving mode includes track mode*, individual mode, sport mode, tour mode, range mode.

Safety



In this interface, the drive assist, active safety and passenger safety can be set.

Click on the $^{\oplus}$ icon in the upper left corner of the central display screen to quickly open the **Safety** interface.

Sound



In this screen, you can set the sound, sound optimization, volume and other functions.

You can also adjust the volume in the following ways:

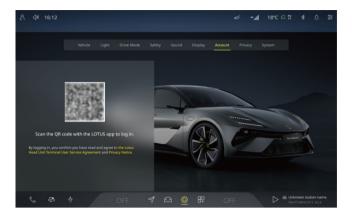
- Click the multifunction panel on the CSD, and click or drag the slider to adjust the volume of multimedia, navigation, phone, and voice.
- Click the volume settings on the rear display screen, and click or drag the slider to adjust the volume.
- Turn down the menu/voice paddle on the right side of the steering wheel or activate the voice function to adjust the volume. The range of voice adjustment is 1 to 27.

Display



This interface can be set for the central display, passenger display, rear display, etc.

Account



Scan the QR code to log in to your account. After entering the user interface, you can switch or log out the account, view user agreements, and set up simultaneous login and exit for some third-party accounts.

You can also tap the profile photo in the upper left corner of the CSD to quickly enter and set up the services you need.

Privacy



This screen allows you to perform privacy settings, view the Lotus privacy policy.

① Note!

When the relevant privacy functions are not enabled, some functions of the vehicle cannot be used properly.

System



In this interface, you can set language, notification, date and time, unit, and other content.

OTA system upgrade operation

When a frompt appears on the central display screen, you need to connect to a secure Wi-Fi connection or mobile hotspot. If the vehicle is already connected to Wi-Fi, you will not see this prompt.

The download happens automatically in the background when the car is connected to Wi-Fi or a mobile hotspot, and when the car is active.



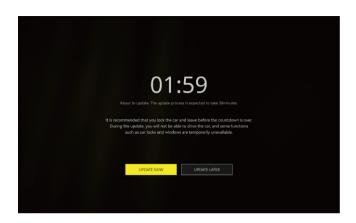
You can open the OTA system upgrade interface by clicking $\underline{\psi}$ icon at the top of the central display or clicking $\underline{\emptyset}$ icon and selecting **System** - **Check for update** from the setting interface. The update information field will show the purpose, items, the estimated time required for the upgrade, the impact of the upgrade on the vehicle functions and any notes related to the upgrade.



After activating the OTA upgrade interface, you need to read and agree to the **Software Remote Upgrade Service Terms** . Then you can choose **UPDATE NOW** or **SCHEDULE** .

① Note!

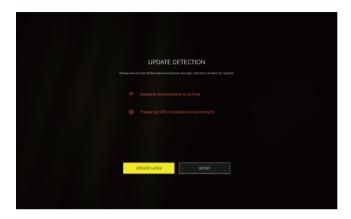
You can open **Night-Time AutoUpdate**, and the subsequent OTA push will automatically schedule the installation and upgrade from 03:00 to 04:00 at night after the download is completed.



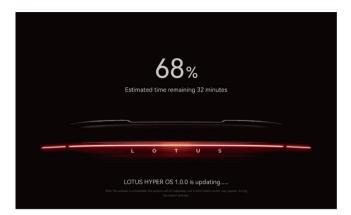
If you select Update now, a countdown prompt box will appear on the CSD. You can wait until the countdown is over to automatically start the upgrade, or you can select to skip the countdown for immediate upgrade, or choose not to upgrade temporarily.



You can also schedule an OTA system upgrade at any time within 24 hours. Once set, the scheduled upgrade icon will be displayed at the upper right of the interface. The system will automatically start the OTA upgrade at the scheduled time when the network is connected.



Before the upgrade is officially started, the system will test the upgrade prerequisites. If the test fails, the failed items need to be confirmed one by one. After the upgrade conditions are confirmed to be met, you can tap **RETRY** to try upgrading again.



After the official start of the upgrade, the system upgrade process will continue for a period of time depending on the version. After the upgrade is completed, the system will restart accompanied with a brief black screen.



After the upgrade is completed, the system will enter the preparation process, which is expected to take a few minutes.

⚠ Warning!

Be sure to operate this function after your vehicle has been parked in a safe area and in P gear, otherwise it may cause upgrade failure, or even personal injury or death.

① Note!

If the OTA system upgrade fails, the Lotus Customer Care Centre should be contacted immediately.

Upgrade precautions

Please ensure that the vehicle meets all of the following conditions before conducting an OTA upgrade:

- The vehicle is parked in a safe area and engaged in P gear.
- The network connection to vehicle is normal.
- The high voltage battery of the vehicle is greater than 20% SOC.
- The vehicle is not in state of charge.

Rear display



1. Time

- Seat: in the seat interface, you can adjust the seat by clicking the relevant buttons.
- Quick Access: in the quick access interface, you can adjust the brightness of the rear screen, automatic screen shutdown time.
 If your vehicle is equipped with a panoramic sunroof, you can adjust the panoramic sunroof on this interface.
- Sound: in the sound interface, you can adjust the sound mode and sound focus.
- 5. Lifting or folding of rear display*
- 6. Volume adjustment
- 7. A/C
- 8. Settings
- 9. Multimedia
- 10. Screen OFF

⚠ Warning!

The rear display is provided with anti-pinch function when folded. However, to ensure safety, do not place your hands or other objects under the rear display to avoid pinching your hands or causing damage to the rear display.

Caution!

You can click on the $\square \mathfrak{I}$ icon in the rear display screen to control the lifting or retraction of the rear display screen. Do not use violent pressure to prevent damage to the rear display screen.

① Note!

After the vehicle is locked, the rear display screen will automatically fold up. Some models do not support the rear display function of raising or retracting.

Rear display locking



When you want to prevent rear passengers from operating the rear display, you can tap the @icon on the CSD, select **Display**, and then tap **Rear display lock (Child lock)** to turn on or off the rear display locking function.

After you turn on the **Rear display lock (Child lock)** function, tapping the rear display will briefly light up the screen, where the method of reopening the rear display will appear. If you do not operate for a period of time, the rear display be will automatically locked.





Necessity of maintenance

Please follow the routine maintenance schedule in this manual to ensure the normal use of the vehicle and a good ride experience, and to reduce the possible maintenance costs incurred.

The routine maintenance in this manual requires the joint participation of you (the user) and Lotus retailer, and shall be carried out according to the relevant instructions specified in this manual.

Considering the complexity of the vehicle system, we strongly recommend that you go to Lotus retailer for maintenance and repair. This is to ensure your safety.

If you have any questions about this, please contact Lotus retailer for more information.

Daily maintenance

Daily maintenance is an important measure to keep the car in good condition, ensure its normal use, driving safety and reduce vehicle failures. You should refer to the relevant instructions in this manual to complete the daily maintenance items before driving. If any abnormality is found, please contact your Lotus retailer in time. The daily maintenance items are mainly including the following:

- Check the power of the high voltage battery.
- Check all exterior lights, horns, direction indicator lamps, hazard warning lamps for proper operation. Check if any indicator lamps on the instrument cluster come on abnormally.
- Check seat belts and parking brake for proper operation.
- Check the door window switch for proper operation.
- Check the wipers and windscreen washer for normal operation, check the wiper washer fluid level, and add if necessary.
- Check if the pressure of each tyre is normal. Check if there is any damage to the tyres (such as punctures, cuts, cracks, and bulges). Check if there is abnormal wear on the tread and remove foreign objects from the tread. Check the tyre for wear (whether it has reached the wear mark position).
- Check if the wheels are functioning properly and if there is any corrosion, deformation, or cracking caused by impact, collision, or contamination with corrosive liquids. If you are unable to determine whether there is an abnormality on your own, please contact the Lotus retailer in a timely manner.
- When driving in low temperature or icy/snowy environments, in order to avoid corrosion or damage to the wheels and brake calipers by deicing agents, it is recommended to check the surface of the wheels and brake calipers for ice and snow accumulation in a timely manner and remove them in a timely manner.

Scheduled maintenance

To maintain warranty validation and help ensure proper safety, performance and dependability of the vehicle, Lotus cars requires that the vehicle be serviced in accordance with latest version of the maintenance schedule.

Each service should be performed within 30,000km or 24 months of the previous service, whichever occurs first.

See the table below for specific information relating to items replaced, fluids changed, and other operations carried out during servicing; for further information please contact any authorised Lotus retailer.

Inspection items	Every 2 years or 30,000km
Cabin pollen filter	R
Brake fluid	R
Battery coolant	I
Wiper blades	I
Brake system	I

Inspection items	Every 2 years or 30,000km
Air conditioning system	I
Windshield washer fluid	I
I: check; correct, clean, add, adjust, transpose, lubricate or replace as necessary	
R: replace	

In addition to the items in the table above, coolants must be changed every 5 years or 100,000km; the drive motor transmission lubricant (TZ264XY000)* must be changed every 4 years or 80.000km, whichever comes first.

Additional maintenance items or shorter service intervals may be required if the car is regularly driven in the following harsh conditions.

- Often in a highly dusty conditions.
- Often in severe cold (below 0°C) or high (above 40°C) temperatures.
- Often in wet conditions or frequently wading in water.
- Often on roads with salty or corrosive materials.
- Frequent braking or driving in hilly areas.
- Used for operational activities or for special purposes such as frequent use under high loads.

Used for racing or competitive activities.

Precautions for maintenance

If the vehicle is left unused for a long time, it is recommended that you go to the Lotus retailer for a comprehensive inspection and maintenance.

Warranty coverage

This manual applies to the model purchased and used by users in any country in Europe where the Lotus retailer is present. If the vehicles specified in this manual are subject to failures or defects that occur within the warranty period for any reasons other than the user factor, natural phenomenon and other external influences, Lotus will use original parts (including Lotus approved parts) and provide repair services in a reasonable and effective manner that complies with Lotus maintenance standards, and bear related costs.

Warranty period

The warranty period for vehicle and replaced parts at your own expense is described in the following table:

Vehicle warranty		
Classify	Content	Limited warranty period
High Voltage Components	HV battery, electric drive systems (drive motors, drive motor controller assemblies, reducers)	96 months or 200,000 km (the high voltage battery should maintain at least 70% SOH within the warranty period)
Basic warranty	The whole vehicle and except the parts below	60 months or 150,000 km
Consumable parts	Pollen filter	12 months or 30,000 km
	Brake pads	12 months or 16,000 km
	12V battery	Unlimited mileage for 24 months
	Wiper blades	12 months or 16,000 km
	Key fob battery	6 months or 10,000 km

Vehicle warranty		
Classify	Content	Limited warranty period
	Fuses and general purpose relays (excluding ECU)	12 months or 16,000 km
	Tyre (tyre warranty is covered by the tyre manufacturer)	6 months or 10,000 km
Vehicle body corrosion (through holes in the vehicle body panel from the inside out)		Unlimited mileage for 12 years
Paint warranty		Unlimited mileage for 5 years

Note: the above deadlines are whichever comes first.

Customer's own expense replacement parts warranty		
Classify	Content	Limited warranty period
Key parts	HV battery, electric drive systems (drive motors, drive motor controller assemblies, reducers)	Unlimited mileage for 24 months

Customer's own expense replacement parts warranty		
Classify	Content	Limited warranty period
Wear and tear parts	Pollen filter	12 months or 30,000 km
	Brake pads	12 months or 16,000 km
	12V battery	Unlimited mileage for 24 months
	Tyre (tyre warranty is covered by the tyre manufacturer)	6 months or 10,000 km
	Wiper blades	12 months or 16,000 km
	Key fob battery	6 months or 10,000 km
	Fuses and general purpose relays (excluding ECU)	12 months or 16,000 km
Accessories not mentioned above		Unlimited mileage for 24 months

Note: the above deadlines are whichever comes first.

The warranty does not cover the following:

- The situation that the actual mileage of the vehicle cannot be determined because the odometer in the vehicle has been modified without authorization.
- Battery damage as a result of storage, improper use of the vehicle, or the installation of electrical accessories not authorized by Lotus.
- Any damage to the hardware or software of the vehicle due to unauthorized access to vehicle data or software from any source; Any loss or damage to personal information/data uploaded to the vehicle; Viruses, bugs, malware or any other form of interference or cyber-attack.
- Vehicle damage due to fatigue driving or overload.
- Vehicle damage caused by the use of the vehicle as a power source.
- Normal wear, tear and deterioration (e.g., discolouration, fading, deformation, blurring, etc.) of components which are not deemed as defects of manufacturing or materials.

① Note!

- For accessories or high-quality parts with a separately agreed warranty, the agreed warranty period shall prevail.
- If the high voltage battery needs to be maintained due to a problem, authorised Lotus retailer will evaluate and determine

- the maintenance method (repair, replace or provide refurbished parts).
- The power consumption of the key fob battery varies according to the usage scenario. If the key fob is kept near the vehicle, it will be in the high power consumption state for a long time. Try to avoid placing the key fob near the vehicle for a long time. If the power level of the key fob is low, there will be a prompt in the instrument cluster to remind you to replace the battery in time.

Description of warranty period

Within the warranty period, if the parts are subject to quality problems under the normal use of the vehicle due to defects in the design, manufacture or raw materials, Lotus will provide warranty service for the aforementioned parts. These repairs will be free of charge for the customer if they are carried out by the Lotus retailer.

Service record

First maintenance (2 years or 30,000km)		
VIN		
Sheet no.		

First maintenance (2 years or 30,000km)	
Mileage	
Date	
Description	
Next maintenance date	
Next maintenance mileage	
Signature	

Second maintenance (4 years or 60,000km)	
VIN	
Sheet no.	
Mileage	
Date	
Description	
Next maintenance date	
Next maintenance mileage	
Signature	

Third maintenance (6 years or 90,000km)	
VIN	
Sheet no.	
Mileage	
Date	
Description	
Next maintenance date	
Next maintenance mileage	
Signature	

Fourth maintenance (8 years or 120,000km)	
VIN	
Sheet no.	
Mileage	
Date	
Description	
Next maintenance date	

Fourth maintenance (8 years or 120,000km)	
Next maintenance mileage	
Signature	

Fifth maintenance (10 years or 150,000km)	
VIN	
Sheet no.	
Mileage	
Date	
Description	
Next maintenance date	
Next maintenance mileage	
Signature	

Sixth maintenance (12 years or 180,000km)	
VIN	
Sheet no.	

Sixth maintenance (12 years or 180,000km)	
Mileage	
Date	
Description	
Next maintenance date	
Next maintenance mileage	
Signature	

Seventh maintenance (14 years or 210,000km)	
VIN	
Sheet no.	
Mileage	
Date	
Description	
Next maintenance date	
Next maintenance mileage	
Signature	

Eighth maintenance (16 years or 240,000km)				
VIN				
Sheet no.				
Mileage				
Date				
Description				
Next maintenance date				
Next maintenance mileage				
Signature				

Ninth maintenance (18 years or 270,000km)				
VIN				
Sheet no.				
Mileage				
Date				
Description				
Next maintenance date				

Ninth maintenance (18 years or 270,000km)				
Next maintenance mileage				
Signature				

Tenth maintenance (20 years or 300,000km)				
VIN				
Sheet no.				
Mileage				
Date				
Description				
Next maintenance date				
Next maintenance mileage				
Signature				

Note: the above deadlines are whichever comes first.

Change of ownership

Change of ownership

The limited warranty of the vehicle provided in this manual is not subject to the transfer of vehicle ownership, but the remaining limited warranty period of the vehicle shall still be calculated from the date of the purchase invoice (the date of first invoicing) held by the first owner of the vehicle.

Record of ownership change

Change log				
Address of current user	Address of original user			
ID number	ID number			
Postal code	Postal code			
Phone of current user	Phone of original user			
Email	Email			
Mobile phone number	Mobile phone number			

Change log		
VIN	Drive motor number	
Model	Date of registration	
Mileage at the time of ownership change	Date of change	
Registration plate number		
Stamp		

Storage and maintenance

In order to maintain the good performance of the vehicle, please avoid exposing the vehicle to an environment with too high or too low temperature for prolonged time. When the ambient temperature is too low for vehicle storage, the vehicle range will be reduced and the charging time will increase.

If you receive a low battery alert or the vehicle's power battery is less than 20%, please charge the vehicle as soon as possible. Depletion of high voltage battery will lead to a decrease in its performance.

When the vehicle needs to be parked for a long time, do not let the high voltage battery run out. Even if the vehicle is not running, the high voltage battery will continue to slowly discharge to supply power to the on-board electronic equipment. In this case, please ensure that the power of the high voltage battery is sufficient. Please maintain the high voltage battery at least once every 3 months as follows: charge the battery fully by slow charging, and then discharge to 50% to 70% SOC before parking the vehicle.

If you are intended to start a vehicle that has been parked for more than 3 months, ensure to check whether any warning lamp or warning message related to the high voltage battery appears on the instrument cluster before doing so. In case of any questions, please contact Lotus Customer Care Centre.

(i) Note!

- When the vehicle is parked for a long time, be sure to check and maintain it regularly.
- For safety reasons, the available power of high-voltage batteries that are beyond their designed service life will be gradually limited.

Battery



Battery

The battery is located under the luggage area floor of the car.

The service life and function of the battery are affected by many factors, such as the number of starts, driving style, driving conditions, climatic conditions, etc.:

 If the battery is completely discharged multiple times, its service life may be shortened. Keeping the battery charged enough helps extend its lifespan. The starting capacity of the battery will be weakened over time.
 If the vehicle is parked for a long time, the battery may need to be recharged.

⚠ Warning!

- Battery electrolyte is corrosive, and if it gets into the eyes or skin, rinse immediately with plenty of water and seek medical care.
- The maintenance and care of the battery should be handled by professionally trained personnel.
- It is prohibited to touch the positive and negative terminals of the battery with both hands simultaneously or to touch the positive and negative terminals with a conductor at any time.
- If you notice a battery fire, be sure to leave the vehicle quickly. In case that thick smoke is inhaled, move away from the vehicle and seek medical attention as soon as possible.

□ Caution!

If you notice the following, be sure to stop using the vehicle and cut off the power immediately. You can also contact the Lotus Customer Care Centre for further guidance:

- Power cords, plugs, or communication lines are cracked or damaged;
- Signs of overheating, fumes, and sparks;

Battery pack damage (e.g., cracking), battery leakage.

Safety warning for battery handling



Beware of the voltage hazard of the battery.



It is forbidden to connect positive and negative terminals.



The battery contains a highly corrosive toxic acid.



The battery may release flammable gases, so open flames or other sources of ignition are prohibited near the battery.



The battery shall be kept out of reach of children.



When any operator is working near or handling batteries, always wear appropriate eye protection appliances to prevent splashing battery electrolyte from getting into the eyes.



The battery after use cannot be discarded at will, which is harmful to the environment, so it must be recycled in an environmentally friendly and safe way.



Recycle the battery in the right way.

Tyre information

Tyre wear

To reduce tyre wear and extend tyre life, please have your tyres serviced according to your driving habits and road conditions:

- For new tyres, the first 500 km of driving is the running-in period, during which the tyres should be run-in by careful driving at a proper speed, so as to prolong the service life of the tyres.
- Fast driving in corners, too fast acceleration and emergency braking will all increase tyre wear.

- Avoid sudden acceleration or emergency braking.
- When driving over curbs, potholes, gravel roads, or similar roads, please avoid passing in a timely manner. If you cannot avoid passing, please maintain a low speed and do not directly press over the curbs.

Tyre economy:

- Maintain the correct tyre pressure.
- Avoid sudden braking as much as possible.
- Tyre wear accelerates with increased speed.
- Maintain proper wheel alignment.
- Avoid tyre damage caused by corrosive liquid contamination of the tyres.
- Wheel imbalance can lead to poor tyre economy and ride comfort.
- Tyres must rotate in the same direction throughout their entire service life.

The damage to tyres and rims is not easily noticeable. If the vehicle experiences abnormalities during running (such as tyre pressure warning, vibration, deviation, etc.), please immediately slow down and park the vehicle in a safe place to check if the tyres/rims are damaged. If the damage cannot be identified from the appearance, please contact or request assistance from Lotus retailer.

⚠ Warning!

- If the tyre wear is uneven, it is recommended that you go to Lotus retailer for four-wheel alignment and dynamic balance detection.
- If damage is found to the tyre, even if it is not deflated, it should be immediately stopped from use. When the wheel rim is deformed, cracked, or severely corroded, it should also be immediately stopped from use. Be sure to keep the tyres/rims in a safe state when driving the vehicle.
- Do not drive your car if a tyre is damaged, excessively worn. or inflated to an incorrect pressure. Please always to use the correct size tyres. Refer to rim and tyre specifications.

Seasonal tyres

In low temperature environment below 7 °C, the performance of summer tyres will decrease. In this case, Lotus recommends replacing the vehicle's tyres with winter tyres.

Winter tyres can improve the traction in icy conditions. Be sure to install the correct winter tyres. If you have any questions, please contact Lotus Customer Care Centre for relevant advice on winter tyres.

When driving a vehicle with winter tyres fitted, you may experience increased tyre noise, reduced tread life and reduced traction on dry roads.

Switching between low roll resistance tyres and high-performance tyres will have an impact on the range. We suggest that you upgrade the configuration at the Lotus Customer Care Centre.

⚠ Warning!

Summer tyres cannot provide sufficient traction in cold or icy conditions, and they are prone to cracking and damage at extremely low temperatures. Choosing and fitting proper tyres for vehicle operation in winter is also critical to ensuring the safety and optimum performance of your car.

! Caution!

- The use of winter tyres should conform to local regulations.
- If the tread depth of a winter tyre is less than 4mm, it must be replaced.
- If the tread depth of a summer tyre is less than 1.6mm, it must be replaced to advid accidents.

Tyre chain

Be sure to install chains on vehicle tyres before travelling on snow or icy roads in winter. The tyre chain can increase the friction with the road, thereby reducing the risk of side-slip.

For installation of the anti-skid chain, please refer to the anti-skid chain manufacturer's instructions for use. When using tyre chains, pay attention to the following:

- The use of tyre chain should conform to local regulations.
- When driving with tyre chains, the vehicle speed must not exceed 50km/h.
- The chain can be installed on the drive wheel. Please use the corresponding tyre chains of the recommended specifications.
- Tyre chains may not be available for wheels of some size. Please contact Lotus Customer Care Centre for specific information.
- When driving a vehicle with tyre chains, you may feel that the manoeuvrability is affected.
- When driving a vehicle with tyre chains, avoid sharp turns or locked wheels.
- When driving to snow-free sections, remove the tyre chains to avoid damage to the tyres or excessive wear of the tyre chains.

Tyre specifications	Recommended anti-skid chain
, ,	models
Front: 255/45 R20	RUD comfort CENTRAXN894/K- SUMMIT XXL K66
Rear: 285/40 R20	RUD comfort CENTRAXN894/K- SUMMIT XXL K66
Front: 265/40 R21	RUD comfort CENTRAXN899/K- SUMMIT XXL K67
Rear: 305/35 R21	RUD comfort CENTRAXN899/K- SUMMIT XXL K67
Front: 265/40 ZR21	RUD comfort CENTRAXN899/K- SUMMIT XXL K67
Rear: 305/35 ZR21	RUD comfort CENTRAXN899/K- SUMMIT XXL K67
Front: 265/35 R22	RUD comfort CENTRAXN899/K- SUMMIT XXL K66
Rear: 305/30 R22	RUD comfort CENTRAXN899/K- SUMMIT XXL K67

- After the anti-skid chain is installed, the air suspension adjustment of the body height is not allowed to be lower than the STANDARD.
- Do not install snow chains on summer tyres.
- Do not install anti-skid chains by deflating the tyres.
- If you hear unusual noises from tyre chains during driving, stop the vehicle immediately for inspection.

Checking under the hood of the front compartment

Coolant

The vehicle has been filled with coolant at delivery. When the fluid level in the coolant reservoir is lower than the recommended level, the instrument cluster will display a corresponding prompt. If you receive corresponding prompt while driving, park your vehicle in a safe area, and contact Lotus Customer Care Centre immediately.

When the vehicle is subject to maintenance, the technicians of Lotus Customer Care Centre will check the coolant and add in case of shortage.

Insufficient coolant



Check the coolant level from time to time to ensure that the level is between the MIN and MAX marks.

If the coolant level is lower than the recommended level, stop driving as soon as safety allows and contact Lotus Customer Care Centre.

⚠ Warning!

Do not open the coolant reservoir lid at high temperatures in the bonnet to avoid personal injury caused by coolant splashing under excessive air pressure in the reservoir when the lid is being opened.

If you find that the coolant is insufficient, it should be added by professional staff. Never add the coolant by yourself.

① Note!

Please treat the used coolant in accordance with applicable environmental protection laws.

Brake fluid

⚠ Warning!

- When the fluid level in the brake fluid reservoir is lower than the recommended level, the instrument cluster will display a corresponding prompt. If you receive corresponding prompt while driving, park your vehicle in a safe area, and contact Lotus retailer immediately.
- If you notice the brake pedal becoming loose or significant loss of brake fluid, contact Lotus retailer immediately. Driving in these situations may result in an extended braking distance or complete braking failure.

When the vehicle is subject to maintenance, the technicians of Lotus retailer will check the brake fluid and add in case of shortage.

Insufficient brake fluid



Check the brake fluid level from time to time to ensure that the level is between the MIN and MAX marks.

If the brake fluid level is lower than the recommended level, stop driving as soon as safety allows and contact Lotus Customer Care Centre.

⚠ Warning!

Brake fluid is highly toxic. Containers should be kept tightly sealed and out of reach of children. If the brake fluid gets onto your skin or into eyes, wash immediately with plenty of water and go to the doctor immediately.

- Brake fluid can damage the paint surface. The spill can be immediately absorbed with an absorbent cloth and the affected area must be cleaned with car cleaner product mixed with water.
- If the brake fluid is found to be insufficient, it should be added by a professional staff. Never add the brake fluid by yourself.

Windscreen washer fluid

Regularly check the windscreen washer fluid. When the fluid in the reservoir is less than 1.0 L, a corresponding text prompt will appear on the instrument cluster, reminding you to refill the washer fluid in time.

Operate the washer regularly and check whether the nozzle is clogged and can spray properly.

Filling windscreen washer fluid



- Clean the reservoir cap to prevent dust from entering the reservoir.
- 2. Open the reservoir cap.
- 3. Add washer fluid until the fluid level reaches the lower edge of the filler port.

Caution!

When the outdoor temperature is lower than 4°C, please empty the washer fluid in the reservoir in time, and change the washer fluid added with antifreeze that is applicable to current temperature to prevent the washer fluid from freezing and affecting the cleaning function or damaging the reservoir.

Pollen filter

The pollen filter can filter the outside air that contains dust, pollen, and certain odours. In case of very strong odours, they may not be completely removed by the pollen filter from the air that will be introduced into the A/C system. Regular replacement of the pollen filter is a part of maintenance work. When you drive your car to Lotus retailer for scheduled maintenance, the staff of Lotus Customer Care Centre will check or replace the pollen filter according to the maintenance interval and the actual situation.

① Note!

When driving frequently in dusty conditions, you should clean the pollen filter more frequently and replace it if necessary.

Inspection and replacement of wiper blade

Replacement of wiper blade



Before replacing the front wiper blade, activate **Settings – Vehicle** – **Windscreen Maintenance** on the CSD, and the front wiper arms will move to the maintenance position.



Wiper arm connector button

Please operate as follows when replacing the wiper blade:

- After the front wiper arm enters the maintenance mode, the wiper arm will rest on the windscreen. At this time, you can lift the wiper arm and adjust the wiper blade to a certain angle until a "click" is heard.
- 2. Press the connector button on the wiper arm, and remove the wiper blade from the wiper arm.
- Align the new wiper blade with the washer fluid connection and install it on the wiper arm.
- 4. After replacing the wiper blades, lower the wiper arms, operate the wiper lever or deactivate the Windscreen Maintenance on CSD, then the wipers will return to the bottom position.

Caution!

- Before activating Windscreen Maintenance, make sure the wiper blade is not frozen on the windscreen.
- After the wiper blade is replaced, ensure that the wiper arm is slowly restored to its original position to avoid damaging the windscreen due to excessive return force of the wiper arm.

Maintenance of wiper blade strip

The contaminants on windscreen or wiper blade strip may reduce the effectiveness of the wiper blade strip. The contaminants include ice, vehicle wax, cleaning fluids containing bacteria or waterproof agent, bird droppings, tree sap, and other organic materials.

Regularly clean the edge of the wiper blade strip and check for cracks, rips and roughness in the rubber. If damaged, please contact the Lotus retailer.

Caution!

The surface of the wiper blade strip is applied with a layer of graphite, which ensures smooth wiping and eliminates wiping noise. Solvent-based cleaning agent, hard sponges and sharp edge tools can damage the graphite layer. If the graphite layer is damaged, the wiping noise of wiper will increase. In this case, you should replace the wiper in time. In winter or cold weather, check whether the wiper blade strips are frozen on the windscreen before using the wipers. If de-icing is not conducted in advance, the wiper blade strips and wiper motor may be damaged.

① Note!

To ensure the cleaning effect, you are recommended to use cleaning products that have been certified by appropriate authorities and approved for use on automotive windscreen and rubber.

Exterior maintenance

Washing vehicle frequently helps maintain the vehicle in good appearance. Washing should be carried out in a cool place. If the vehicle has been exposed to the sun for a long time, we recommend you wait for the body surface to cool down before washing.

When washing will be done through an automatic car washer, be sure to follow the instructions of the washer operator.

When washing the vehicle under high pressure, please direct the water flow at the window instead of the edge of the window so as to prevent water from injecting the inside of the vehicle.

In northern regions in winter, each time after the car is washed, you should wipe water from the gap near the door handle so as to

avoid freezing which may hinder the door handle from unfolding electrically.

To prevent damage to vehicle paint, you should remove corrosive substances (bird droppings, resin, insects, asphalt spots, road salt, industrial dust, etc.) in time before vehicle washing.

The washing of the exterior of the body should be implemented as follows:

- Preparation before cleaning: close the bonnet, doors, windows and tailgate, and check whether the charging port is completely closed.
- Thorough rinsing: rinse off dirt and grit from the vehicle body with a hose before washing. Rinse areas that can easily accumulate dust, mud or road salt, for example, vehicle mudguard.
- Hand wash: add a high-quality neutral vehicle cleaner in cold or warm water, dip the soft cloth wet, and hand wash the outside of the vehicle body.
- Rinsing with clean water: after washing, rinse with clean water to prevent any residual soap liquid on the surface from getting dry.
- Wiping with soft cloth: wipe water from the surface of the vehicle with soft absorbent cloth.

⚠ Warning!

Do not wash the inside of the bonnet with water, otherwise an electrical fault may occur and cause a serious accident.

Caution!

- Do not wash the vehicle with acid-based cleaner. Acids can damage vehicle surface and affect vehicle appearance.
- Do not use strong alkaline soap, strong chemical cleaning agents (such as strong alkaline cleaning agents, tap water, selfcleaning agents), gasoline or solvents to clean the vehicle, as this may affect the appearance of the vehicle.
- Do not use acidic, alkaline and other chemical cleaning agents, petrol or other organic solvents to clean tyres and rims, as this may damage the tyre and wheel surface.
- In regions where the roads are applied with a layer of salt in winter, the underbody should be cleaned regularly to prevent salt build-up which may accelerate corrosion of the underbody and the suspension.
- Before washing the outside of the vehicle, check that all closures of the vehicle are properly closed.
- After washing, wipe the surface of the vehicle clean, otherwise the residual cleaner may corrode the outside surface of the vehicle.

Do not use lint or coarse cloth, such as vehicle washing gloves.

Automatic washing

Automatic washer is convenient and efficient, but it cannot wash the vehicle thoroughly. To get better washing effect, we recommend you wash the vehicle manually.

Caution!

When using automatic washer:

- Make sure the outside mirrors are folded, otherwise the vehicle may be damaged.
- The vehicle should be able to move freely and the automatic parking function must be disabled.
- Disable the automatic wiper function and ensure that the hidden door handles are retracted, otherwise the vehicle may be damaged.

High-pressure washing

When using a high-pressure washer to wash the vehicle, please follow the operating instructions for the equipment, especially the working pressure and spray distance. The nozzle should not get too close to soft materials such as rubber hoses or seals.

⚠ Warning!

If you need to use the vehicle immediately after washing, depress the brake pedal several times to remove moisture from the brake pads. Moisture may affect the braking efficiency.

Caution!

- Do not wash the sensors with high-pressure washer or steam washer, otherwise they may be damaged. Wash all sensor surfaces with a small flow of water for a short time and keep a distance of at least 10 cm from it during washing.
- Before washing the vehicle, check that all closures of the vehicle are properly closed.
- In cold winter, it is recommended that the high-pressure flushing time of the side radar box be less than 2 minutes. Do not flush the gap of the side radar box cover directly to avoid excessive water accumulation inside the radar box, which may cause internal mechanisms to freeze and prevent the lidar from extending.
- The vehicle should be washed in strict accordance with the operating instructions for high-pressure washer, with particular attention paid to the working pressure and the spray distance. If a pressure washer is used, make sure the nozzle is at least 30 cm away from the surface of the body. Keep moving the nozzle frequently other than spraying water to one area continuously,

otherwise high-pressure water flow may go into vehicle parts and cause gradual damage. Do not direct the nozzle at the charging port and spray water to the port.

Polishing and waxing

High-quality wax can protect vehicle paint against environmental damages and even minor scratches. In case that the water droplets can no longer smoothly fall from the painted surface of clean body, you should immediately apply a layer of high-quality hard wax as curing agent on the paint of the vehicle. If you use curing agent regularly, it is recommended to apply a layer of hard wax at least twice a year to protect the body paint.

Polishing is only required when the body paint does not show any lustre and waxing can no longer ensure glossy paint. Parts applied with matte paint or plastic parts should not be polished.

Cleaning of windows and wing mirrors

- The windows and wing mirrors should be cleaned with alcoholbased glass cleaner. After cleaning, the liquid on the surface of the glass should be dried with clean, soft, lint-free cloth or chamois cloth.
- After the body surface is maintained, remove residual wax from the glass with special cleaner and cleaning cloth to prevent the wiper blade from being scratched.

- Remove snow from windows and wing mirrors with a small brush.
- The accumulated ice can be removed by deicer spray or deicing shovel. However, you must be specially cautious to avoid damaging the parts, and the ice must be scraped in the same direction.

- It is prohibited to remove snow and ice from windscreens and wing mirrors with hot water. Otherwise, the glass may burst.
- Residual rubber, grease and silicone substances on the glass must be removed with special window cleaner or silicone cleaner.

Matte paint maintenance

If your vehicle uses a matte paint, please maintain it in the following ways to avoid damage to the paint due to improper maintenance methods:

- Please use a soft sponge with vehicle cleaner and plenty of water to manually clean the matte paint surface.
- When there is bird droppings or insect residue on the matte paint surface, please use a professional cleaning agent to clean it.

□ Caution!

- Do not polish the matte paint surface to avoid losing its matte texture.
- Do not use paint cleaners or gloss protectors (such as car wax) to avoid damage to the matte paint surface of the car.
- If the matte paint surface is damaged, please be sure to go to the Lotus retailer for paint repair.

Caution!

Please avoid the following actions that may reduce the matte effect of the matte paint surface:

- Use inappropriate materials to forcefully wipe the paint surface.
- Frequent use of automatic washer equipment to clean vehicles.
- Clean the vehicle in direct sunlight.

Maintenance of sealing strip

Remove dust and dirt from the surface of the sealing strip using soft cloth during maintenance. Regularly apply special protective agent to the surface of the sealing strip.

Interior maintenance

Use Lotus-recommended cleaners and vehicle maintenance products as much as possible. Regularly clean the vehicle inside with a vacuum cleaner.

! Caution!

- Some coloured clothes (such as dark jeans, sheepskin or Alcantara clothing) or cosmetics may stain the interior fabrics. If so, clean and take measures to protect the affected areas as soon as possible.
- Do not use washer fluid, gasoline or liquor, and other strong solvents to clean the interiors of the vehicle, as this may damage the interior fabrics and other interior materials.
- Do not spray cleaners directly on parts with electrical buttons and controls.
- During cleaning, do not use sharp objects to avoid damaging the interior materials.

Maintenance and cleaning of leather interiors

Leather is a natural fabric that will change and develop exquisite lustre over time. To keep the performance, colour and lustre of the leather, you should regularly clean and maintain the leather materials. Otherwise, the dirt and grease may gradually impair the protective layer of the leather.

When maintaining the leather material inside the vehicle, please use the special maintenance products for leather recommended by Lotus for cleaning/maintenance.

① Note!

- Clean the dirt on the surface of light colored leather as soon as possible;
- Dry as soon as possible when water drips on the leather surface;
- A little dirt or dust can be gently wiped with a thoroughly wrung white cloth (soaked with pure water), and then open the window to let it dry naturally or dry it gently with a dry rag. Do not expose to high temperature or dry it with an electric hair dryer;
- When maintaining the leather materials in the car, avoid contacting solvents (such as butanone, acetone, liquor, methanol, ethanol, propanol, etc.), detergents (such as washing powder, detergent, detergent, etc.), disinfectants, gasoline and other reagents, which may cause discoloration or damage to the leather surface.

Maintenance and cleaning of Alcantara interiors

Alcantara material is highly practical and has the characteristics of soft texture and full colour. In addition, they have certain degree of

dirt resistance, and the advantage of being relatively easy to clean after getting dirty, making them easy to maintain.

In order to maintain the appearance of this material, please use special maintenance products for Alcantara recommended by Lotus for cleaning/maintenance.

If no special detergents are available when you are cleaning Alcantara products, you can observe the following instructions:

- Use a soft bristled brush, dry cloth, or vacuum cleaner for surface cleaning.
- Gently wipe the surface of Alcantara with a thoroughly wrung white cloth or sponge (soaked in pure water), and then open the window for ventilation to let it dry naturally. After drying, gently comb down with a soft bristle brush to restore the fabric to its original state.

! Caution!

- When stains appear locally, they shall be treated immediately to avoid spreading or depositing, while avoiding friction to prevent the stains from spreading or penetrating the material.
- Do not use steam equipment during cleaning.

Maintenance and cleaning of seat belt

Pull out the seat belt and wipe it. After cleaning, let it dry naturally.

$oldsymbol{\Lambda}$ Warning!

Do not use bleach, dyes or chemical solvents to clean seat belts. These materials can seriously impair the fabric performance of seat helts

Maintenance and cleaning of floor mats

To prolong the service life of the carpet on the vehicle, you should clean the floor mats regularly and install them properly. If the floor mats are excessively worn, replace them in time.

⚠ Warning!

- Arrange the floor mats, carpets and other items reasonably to avoid hindering the movement of the pedals.
- Make sure to fasten the floor mats to the floor with the means provided on the vehicle floor.

Maintenance and cleaning of CSD

The dust, dirt and grease on your fingers can affect the performance and clarity of the CSD. Clean the display frequently with microfibre cloth.

- Keep the CSD and electrical components away from liquids and moisture to prevent them from being affected or damaged.
- During cleaning, do not press with great force or use abrasive materials, as this may cause damage.

Precautions during run-in period

In order to ensure your new vehicle has the optimal performance and stability, Lotus recommends you to pay attention to the runin of the new vehicle at the initial period of use (i.e., 1,000km). During this period, you need to do daily inspections to identify and eliminate problems in advance, so as to improve the run-in quality:

- Before driving, make sure that the tyre pressure is within the standard range, and the coolant and brake fluid are sufficient. If there are relevant prompts or warnings on the instrument cluster, please deal with them in time.
- If you notice any unusual noises while driving, you should stop the car for inspection, and contact Lotus retailer for the problem that you cannot solve by yourself.
- Please avoid driving at a low speed or high speed for a long time when the vehicle is fully loaded.
- Always drive at a constant speed and sudden braking should be avoided as much as possible.

 When the specified driving mileage or the specified maintenance interval has been reached, please visit Lotus retailer in time to have your car serviced accordingly.

Brake run-in

For the new brake on a new vehicle, the brake pads have not reached their optimum condition and cannot deliver the best braking effect, so run-in is required.

During the first 500km of a new vehicle, you should keep your vehicle at a higher than usual safe distance from the vehicles ahead while driving and avoid sudden braking as much as possible.





Guidance for traffic accidents

When the car is involved in a traffic accident, follow the steps below:

- Park the car (if it can still be driven normally after the accident)
 in a safe place and turn on the hazard warning lights. If the car
 needs towing, please contact the Lotus Customer Care Centre.
- 2. Take out the reflective vest from the glove box and put it on.
- 3. Take out the warning triangle from the boot storage box.
- 4. Place the warning triangle behind the car as specified.

⚠ Warning!

- In the event of an emergency traffic accident, personal injury or major fire, please contact for rescue as soon as possible.
- In the event of a car fire, passengers should exit the car swiftly, call emergency services, and let them know that the car is electric with high-voltage components.

Emergency call



Emergency call system is divided into E-Call and Lotus SOS:

- E-Call is always available in applicable countries.
- You can tap the @ icon on the CSD, select System to access the system settings interface, and tap the eCall to switch between E-call and Lotus SOS functions.
- Lotus SOS is part of the Lotus customized services and is activated as a default function during a certain period. Lotus SOS offers enhanced and additional support and services such as communication between the occupant and trained call center staff in the local language.



SOS button cover

When you have an emergency and need urgent assistance, you can follow these steps:

- Press and turn on the SOS button cover on the front reading lamp.
- 2. Press and hold the SOS button inside the cover to obtain emergency call.

The different colors of the LED indicator on the SOS button indicate the current status of emergency call system:

- Green LED on indicates: TCAM Modem on and no call service active.
- Green LED flashing indicates: Call service active /call ongoing/ incoming call ringing.

- Red LED on indicates: Call exception/unavailable/ DTC fault.
- LED OFF indicates: emergency call system standby/sleep/off.

⚠ Warning!

When the LED indicator on the SOS button is red, drive immediately to the Lotus retailer for service.

When the SOS button is pressed, an emergency call interface will appear on CSD.

When any of the vehicle's airbags or seat belt pretensioners are activated, the road rescue system automatically activates and sends a signal to the Lotus Customer Care Centre. The Lotus Customer Care Centre will provide appropriate assistance (ambulance, police, etc.).

When the emergency call is made successfully, the relevant service personnel of the emergency call centre will ask for your consent to record the conversation and sound in your vehicle, and some of the information of the vehicle (such as VIN) will be transmitted to the emergency call centre together with the vehicle location information.

⚠ Warning!

It is important to leave the vehicle immediately after an emergency call is made in the following cases:

- After an accident.
- The vehicle cannot be driven and in a hazardous area on the road.
- When the vehicle is not clearly visible to drivers in other lanes due to low light or low visibility.

⚠ Warning!

- In the event of a serious collision (e.g. airbag deployment), the E-call function will be automatically activated. If only a minor collision occurs, the function may not be activated automatically.
- In the event of an accident that causes a power outage in your vehicle, the E-call may fail to function properly, and at this time you should get help by other means.

① Note!

- The SOS button should only be used in an emergency, such as an accident, illness or a threat to the driver or passenger. Misuse of this button may incur additional charges.
- When you trigger an emergency rescue call by mistake, you can cancel the call by pressing the SOS button again for a short period of time.
- When there is an owner transfer and the car is sold and used in another country, please visit the local Lotus retailer to set

- up the proper Lotus SOS service in order for the new owner to receive the support accordingly.
- The system only operates in areas with a compatible cell phone network and emergency services infrastructure.
- After completing an emergency call, the emergency operator can call your vehicle, the system automatically answers incoming calls for approximately an hour.

Hazard warning device

Hazard warning lamps



Hazard warning lights switch

In case of emergency during driving, please press the hazard warning lamp switch button to activate the hazard warning lamps.

① Note!

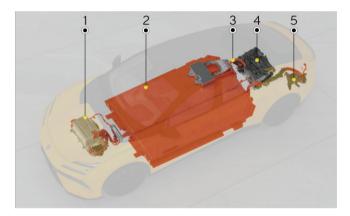
The hazard warning lamps may also be automatically activated by the vehicle safety systems in case of collision or emergency braking.

Warning triangle

When an emergency situation occurs and it is impossible to drive, turn on the hazard warning lamp, then take out the warning triangle from the boot storage box and place it at a sufficient distance from the rear. Please comply with local laws and regulations for specific placement distance.

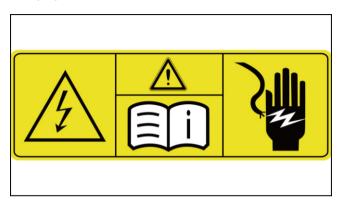
High voltage system information

Overview of High voltage system



- 1. Front drive motor
- 2. High voltage battery
- 3. HV wire harness
- 4. Rear drive motor
- 5. Integrated charging port

Safety sign information



High voltage components are attached with warning signs. Do not touch, disassemble or replace such components.



Warning signs of high voltage connectors.

⚠ Warning!

It is forbidden to touch, disassemble or replace parts and components with high voltage warning signs, orange cables and their connectors on vehicles without permission, so as to avoid personal injuries or casualties.

Modul e	Batter y Model	Volta ge	Batter y Type	Manuf acture Name	Addre ss	Marking
BATTE RY - MAIN	12V - 40Ah	12.8V	Lithiu m-ion batter y	CAME L GROU P CO., LTD.	65 North Hanjia ng Road, Fanch eng Distric t, Xiangy ang City, Hubei Provin ce Camel Corpor ation	CE
12V SUPER CAPA CITOR	M34W -012-0 004	12V	Hybrid ultra capacit or batter y	GMCC ELECT RONIC TECH NOLO GY WUXI CO.,LT D	518-7, 518-9 Zhong hui Road, Huisha n Econo mic Develo pment Zone, Wuxi	

Modul e	Batter y Model	Volta ge	Batter y Type	Manuf acture Name	Addre ss	Marking
					City,Ji angsu Provin ce	
FOB	Panas onic CR203 2	3V	Coin Primar y lithium batter y	Panas onic Energy Co., Ltd.	1-1 Matsus hita- cho, Morigu chi City, Osaka 570-8 511, Japan	
TPMS	MAXE LL CR203 2HR HAOS- T41	3V	Coin type lithium manga nese dioxide batter y	Maxell, Ltd.	Takum idai 5, Ono- shi, Hyogo, 675-13 22 Japan	
TCAM	FDK 3HR- AAUT EW- NSC-4	3.6V	Nickel - Metal hydrid e batter y	FDK CORP ORATI ON	Shibau ra Crystal Shinag awa,	

Modul e	Batter y Model	Volta ge	Batter y Type	Manuf acture Name	Addre ss	Marking
					1-6-41 Konan, Minato -ku,	
					Tokyo 108-8 212 Japan	
BBS	FDK CR173 35EG- ZZ6	3V	Primar y lithium batter y	FDK CORP ORATI ON	Shibau ra Crystal Shinag awa, 1-6-41 Konan, Minato -ku,	
					Tokyo 108-8 212 Japan	
EV Batter Y	CTP80 01166	708V	Lithiu m-ion batter y	Conte mpora ry Amper ex Techn ology Co.,	No.2 Xingan g Road, Zhang wan Town,	

Modul e	Batter y Model	Volta ge	Batter y Type	Manuf acture Name	Addre ss	Marking
					JiaoCh eng	
				Limite d	Distric t, Ningde City, Fujian Provin ce, 35210 0, P.R. China	

Vehicle lifting

⚠ Warning!

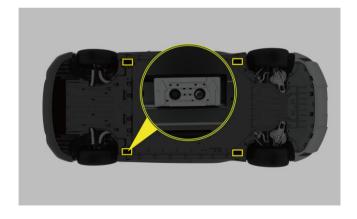
The vehicle must be fixed or lifted at the specified lifting points, as the high voltage battery pack is installed at the bottom of this vehicle. Failure to do so may cause damage to the battery pack, resulting in accidents.

The vehicle lifting steps are as follows:

 Before lifting, tap the @ icon on CSD to select Vehicle and turn on the Jack mode.



2. Make sure all doors, the tailgate and the bonnet are closed, and place the lift arm contact pad at the specified lifting points.



- 3. Adjust the height and position of lift arm contact pad and place it properly.
- 4. Raise the lift, and make sure the lift arm contact pad is kept at a proper position.

⚠ Warning!

- The lifting of the vehicle should be performed by qualified persons.
- Never lift the vehicle when it is charging or connected with a charging cable.
- Before lifting the vehicle, make sure the lift arm contact pad is placed at specified lifting point so as to avoid vehicle damage or personal injury during vehicle lifting.

Caution!

- Since this vehicle is equipped with air suspension, be sure to switch to jack mode before lifting to avoid damages to the vehicle.
- The vehicle must be lifted at the specified lifting point by using the jack. Otherwise damages to the vehicle may be caused.

Jump starting

When the vehicle doors cannot be unlocked due to weak battery, you can refer to **Emergency door unlocking from outside** (p.70) to help you unlock the door in emergency, so as to complete the jump starting.

Caution!

- Do not use batteries with voltage greater than 12V for jump starting.
- Be sure to connect the jumper cable carefully to avoid short circuit due to contact with other components.
- At jump starting, the two vehicles must not come into contact with each other. Otherwise, once the battery positive of the two vehicles are connected, the current may begin to flow immediately, causing short circuit and damages to vehicles.
- For jump starting, be sure to connect the positive terminal first, and then the negative terminal.
- Jump starting is not possible for lead-acid batteries.
- If you encounter any problems during jump starting, please contact Lotus Customer Care Centre in time.

① Note!

The vehicle shall be started for at least 20 minutes to ensure that the battery is charged to the working voltage.

Jump starting in bonnet

In case that a car cannot be started normally due to weak battery, you can start the car by connecting a jumper cable in the bonnet fuse box to the battery of another car.

The specific steps are as follows:



 Park the vehicle in a safe area, and open the fuse box cover in the bonnet of the vehicle with dead battery.

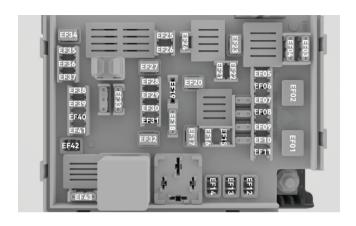
- 2. Connect one end of the red cable to the fuse box terminal of the car with dead battery.
- Connect the other end of the red cable to the positive (+) terminal of the battery in booster car.
- 4. Connect one end of the black cable to the negative (-) terminal of the battery in booster car.
- 5. Connect the other end of the black cable to any metal body part in the bonnet of the car with dead battery.
- 6. After the jumper cable is connected, start the booster car, and a few minutes later, start the car with dead battery. Check whether the car with dead battery can start normally.
- 7. After the car with dead battery starts normally, disconnect the power supply of booster car, remove the jumper cable in reverse order of the connection.

Replace fuse

Bonnet fuse box



Open the bonnet to identify the bonnet fuse box.



Fuse information					
No.	Function	Ampere (A)			
EF01	Cooling fan (ALPHA)	40			
EF02	Cooling fan	60			
EF03-A	Central electronic module	10			
EF03-A	Electronic shifter assembly	10			
EF03-A	Redundant brake control module	10			

Fuse information		
No.	Function	Ampere (A)
EF03-A	Vehicle control unit	10
EF03-A	Electric power steering	10
EF03-A	Brake control module	10
EF03-B	48V super capacitor	10
EF03-B	MV converter module	10
EF03-B	Rear wheel steering module	10
EF03-B	12V lithium battery	10
EF03-B	12V super capacitor	10
EF04 -A	ETC ECU	10
EF04 -B	Accelerator pedal sensor	10
EF05	Airbag control unit	10
EF06	Reserve	20

Fuse information		
No.	Function	Ampere (A)
EF07	Reserve	10
EF08	Reserve	20
EF09	ADAS auxiliary domain controller	10
EF09	Outside streaming mirror controller	10
EF10	Front active stabilizer bar assembly	10
EF10	Rear active stabilizer bar assembly	10
EF10	Rear electric drive system motor	10
EF11	Active air dam module (ALPHA)	10
EF11	Active air dam module (ALPHA)	10
EF11	Active air dam module (ALPHA)	10

Fuse information		
No.	Function	Ampere (A)
EF12	Reserve	40
EF13	Reserve	40
EF14	Reserve	40
EF15	Reserve	20
EF16	High voltage charging system assembly	10
EF17	Washer pump	25
EF18-A	Backup battery sounding device	10
EF18-B	Brake pedal sensor	10
EF18-B	Electronic shifter assembly	10
EF19	Reserve	10
EF20	Brake control module	40

Fuse information		
No.	Function	Ampere (A)
EF21	Right front combination headlamp	15
EF22	Left front combination headlamp	15
EF23	Brake control module	40
EF24	VCU main relay	10
EF25	Horn	20
EF26	CPSR control	10
EF27	Redundant brake control module	40
EF28	High voltage battery pack	10
EF29	Vehicle control unit	15
EF30	Battery radiator water pump	20
EF31	Reserve	20

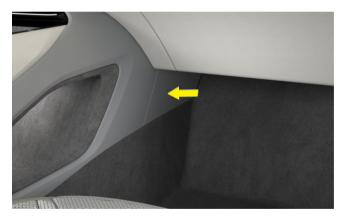
Fuse information		
No.	Function	Ampere (A)
EF32	Electronic cooling water pump _210W	25
EF33-A	Front electric drive system motor	10
EF33-B	High voltage charging system assembly (CN)	10
EF33-B	High voltage charging system assembly (US/EU)	10
EF33-B	High voltage battery pack	10
EF34	Redundant brake control module	30
EF35	Vehicle control unit	10
EF36	Vehicle control unit	20
EF37	Vehicle control unit	20
EF38	Left front radar	10
EF38	Right front radar	10

Fuse information		
No.	Function	Ampere (A)
EF38	Forward-looking MMW radar	10
EF39	DC charging port cover controller for electric vehicle	10
EF39	AC charging port cover controller for electric vehicle	10
EF39	Electric vehicle communication controller	10
EF40	Reserve	10
EF41	Vehicle control unit	20
EF42	Reserve	25
EF43-A	Rear electric drive system motor	10
EF43-A	Front electric drive system motor	10
EF43-A	Motor circuit cooling control valve	10

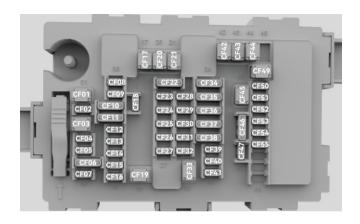
Fuse information		
No.	Function	Ampere (A)
EF43-A	Electronic three- way valve for motor circuit	10
EF43-A	A/C heater (high pressure PTC) assembly	10
EF43-A	A/C control module (A/C compressor)	10
EF43-A	Chiller shut-off valve	10
EF43-A	Motor cooling control valve	10
EF43-B	Heating circuit water pump	10
EF43-B	Condenser inlet electromagnetic on- off valve	10
EF43-B	Shut-off valve actuator	10
EF43-B	OHX shut-off valve	10

Fuse information		
No.	Function	Ampere (A)
EF43-B	Condenser electric expansion valve	10
EF43-B	Evaporator electric expansion valve	10

Central fuse box



The central fuse box is located on the right side of the tunnel console, which can be identified by removing the right front trim panel of the tunnel console.



Fuse information		
No.	Function	Ampere (A)
CF01	Wiper motor	30
CF02	Reserve	30
CF03	Reserve	30
CF04	Left outside streaming mirror screen	10
CF04	Left front door anti-collision radar module (ALPHA)	10

Fuse information		
No.	Function	Ampere (A)
CF04	Left rear door anti-collision radar module (ALPHA)	10
CF05	AMG	10
CF06-A	Interior lighting control module	10
CF06-A	DPS module	10
CF06-B	Left sun visor make- up lamp	10
CF06-B	Right sun visor make-up lamp	10
CF06-B	Inside wing mirror module	10
CF06-B	Glove box lamp switch	10
CF06-B	Sunroof dimming motor controller	10
CF07	ADAS position unit	10

Fuse information		
No.	Function	Ampere (A)
CF08	Negative ion generator	10
CF08	PM2.5 sensor	10
CF09	Combination switch (steering wheel heating)	15
CF10	Reserve	10
CF11	Reserve	7.5
CF12	Reserve	15
CF13	Reserve	15
CF14	Rear USB	20
CF15	12V power socket in boot	20
CF16	Right outside streaming mirror screen	10
CF16	Right front door anti-collision radar module (ALPHA)	10

Fuse information		
No.	Function	Ampere (A)
CF16	Right rear door anti-collision radar module (ALPHA)	10
CF17	Central electronic module	40
CF18	Driver side door module backup power	20
CF18	Backup power of Bluetooth and NFC key communication module	20
CF18	NFC card reader backup power	20
CF19	Reserve	30
CF20	Central electronic module	40
CF21	Right SRS	30
CF22	Reserve	10
CF23	Right rear seat	10

Fuse information		
No.	Function	Ampere (A)
CF23	Left rear seat	10
CF23	Driver seat	10
CF23	Front passenger seat	10
CF24	Reserve	25
CF25	Reserve	10
CF26	Front active stabilizer bar assembly	10
CF26	Rear active stabilizer bar assembly	10
CF27	HUD	10
CF28	Reserve	10
CF29	Reserve	10
CF30	T-BOX	10
CF31	Electronic steering column lock	10

Fuse information		
No.	Function	Ampere (A)
CF32	Passenger screen module	10
CF32	RLSM	10
CF32	DVR	10
CF33	Reserve	30
CF34-A	Outside streaming mirror controller	10
CF34-B	Diagnostic module	10
CF35-A	In-car front radar module (child presence detection)	10
CF35-A	In-car rear radar module (child presence detection)	10
CF35-A	ETC ECU	10
CF35-A	Alcolock	10
CF35-B	CO ₂ sensor	10
CF35-B	Combination switch	10

Fuse information		
No.	Function	Ampere (A)
CF35-B	Interior movement sensor	10
CF36-A	IVI	10
CF36-B	Driver information screen	10
CF36-B	Centre console switch module	10
CF37-A	NFC card reader	10
CF37-A	Bluetooth and NFC key communication module	10
CF37-B	Vehicle gateway module	10
CF38	A/C control unit	10
CF39	WPC (15W)	10
CF40	IHU	15
CF41	Front 12V power socket	20

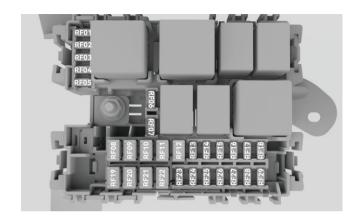
Fuse information		
No.	Function	Ampere (A)
CF42	Driver door module	30
CF43	Reserve	25
CF44	Front passenger door module	30
CF45	Reserve	30
CF46-A	Ambient lamp	10
CF46-B	Ceiling lamp module	10
CF47	WPC (50W)	15
CF49	Front blower	40
CF50	Reserve	10
CF51	Central display rotary module	10
CF51	Rear entertainment screen lifting module	10
CF52	Front USB power	15

Fuse information		
No.	Function	Ampere (A)
CF53	Adjustable steering wheel module	15
CF54	Reserve	25
CF55	Reserve	25

Rear fuse box



Remove the left trim panel from the boot to find the rear fuse box.



Fuse information		
No.	Function	Ampere (A)
RF01	Reserve	10
RF02	Reserve	10
RF03	Left tail lamp	10
RF04	Right tail lamp	10
RF05	Through tail lamp	10
RF06	Reserve	10

Fuse information		
No.	Function	Ampere (A)
RF07	Reserve	10
RF08	Air suspension compressor control unit	50
RF09	Rear seat control module (for 5-seat model)	30
RF10	Rear defroster	30
RF11	POT module	30
RF12	Trailer module	30
RF13	Footstep monitoring module	10
RF14	MV converter module	10
RF14	48V super capacitor	10
RF15	Rear electric drive system motor (IEM)	10
RF16	Rear entertainment module	10

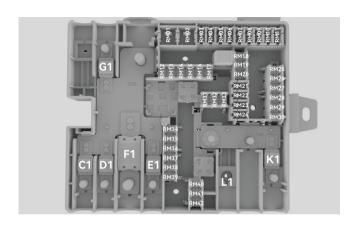
Fuse information		
No.	Function	Ampere (A)
RF16	High mounted stop lamp (ALPHA)	10
RF17	Rear diffuser (ALPHA)	10
RF18	Right front power door module (ALPHA)	10
RF19	Right rear seat control module	40
RF20	Rear seat control module (for 5-seat model)	40
RF20	Left rear seat control module	40
RF21	Suspension module control unit	30
RF22	Trailer module	40
RF23	Right rear power door module (ALPHA)	10

Fuse information		
No.	Function	Ampere (A)
RF24	Active wing motor (AWM)	20
RF25	Tail lamp	15
RF26	Rear electric drive system motor	10
RF27	RR03/RR07 drive	10
RF28	BECM (ALPHA)	10
RF29	High voltage boost converter module	20

Rear main distribution fuse box



Remove the boot storage box to find the rear main distribution fuse box.



Fuse information		
No.	Function	Ampere (A)
C1	48V DCDC	125
D1	Rear wheel steering	80
E1	Boot fuse box	150
F1	Bonnet fuse box	250
G1	Instrument fuse box	200
K1	Bonnet fuse box	125

Fuse information						
No.	Function	Ampere (A)				
L1	Reserve	125				
RM01	Rear electric drive system motor (EDS2-Zues)	60				
RM02	Reserve	60				
RM03	Audio module	30				
RM04	Audio module	30				
RM05	Audio amplifier	30				
RM06	Audio amplifier	30				
RM07	Left rear door module	30				
RM08	Right rear door module	30				
RM09	Driver seat inner connection 30					
RM10	Front passenger seat inner connection	30				

Fuse information							
No.	No. Function Ampere (A)						
RM11	Rear electric drive system motor (EDS2-Zues)	30					
RM12	Left obstacle detection radar	10					
RM12	Right obstacle detection radar	10					
RM12	Rear-view MMW radar	10					
RM13	Reserve	15					
RM14	ADAS main domain controller	20					
RM15	Left front power door module (ALPHA)	15					
RM16	Left rear power door module (ALPHA)	15					
RM17	ADAS auxiliary domain controller	20					
RM18	Reserve	10					

Fuse information					
No.	Function	Ampere (A)			
RM19	ADAS auxiliary domain controller	20			
RM20	ADAS main domain controller	20			
RM21	Reserve	30			
RM22	Reserve	30			
RM23	Reserve	40			
RM24	Left SRS	30			
RM25	Reserve	10			
RM26	Reserve	10			
RM27	Reserve	15			
RM28	Reserve	10			
RM29	Reserve	10			
RM30	Airbag control unit	10			
RM31	Front lidar box	10			
RM31	Rear lidar box	10			

Fuse information						
No.	Function	Ampere (A)				
RM32	Left lidar box	10				
RM32	Right lidar box	10				
RM33	Reserve	10				
RM34	Left front combination headlamp	20				
RM35	Right front combination headlamp	20				
RM36	Left tail lamp	10				
RM37	Right tail lamp	10				
RM38	Reserve	10				
RM39	Left tail lamp controller (ALPHA)	15				
RM40	Front lidar	10				
RM40	Left lidar	10				
RM41	Right lidar	10				

Fuse information					
No.	No. Function				
RM41	Rear lidar	10			
RM42	Reserve	10			

Driver's tools

The driver's tools are placed in the boot storage box, which include:

- Wheel anti-theft bolt adapter
- Electric inflation pump
- Towing ring
- Tyre repair liquid tank
- Warning triangle

① Note!

After the driver's tools are used, please put them back to their original positions to avoid tool damage during emergency braking.

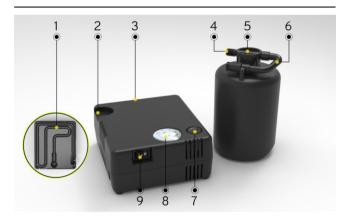
Quick temporary tyre repair

Tyre repair kit

The tyre repair kit can be used to temporarily seal punctures.

① Note!

Tyre repair kit only applies to tyres with puncture on tread. Tyre repair kit cannot be used for sealing if defects such as large cracks, splits or other similar damages are found in tyres.



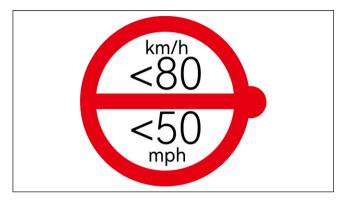
- 1. Electric inflater pump hose
- 2. Tyre repair liquid slot

- 3. Electric inflater pump power cable connector
- 4. Tyre repair liquid valve
- 5. Tyre repair liquid cover
- 6. Tyre repair liquid connecting hose
- 7. Bleed valve
- 8. Tyre pressure gauge
- 9. Electric inflater pump switch

Emergency tyre inflation

- Make sure the electric inflation pump switch is turned off before taking out the electric inflation pump power cable connector and the electric inflation pump hose.
- 2. Loosen the valve dust cover and connect the electric inflation pump hose to tyre valve.
- Connect the power cable connector of the electric inflation pump with the on-board 12V power supply to energize the vehicle.
- 4. Press the electric inflation pump switch to start the electric inflation pump. Inflate the tyre to the pressure recommended on tyre pressure label.
- Turn off the electric inflation pump, and disconnect the electric inflation pump hose and the electric inflation pump power cable connector.
- 6. Refit the valve dust cover.

Quick tyre repair



- Tear off the maximum allowable speed sticker and stick it to steering wheel.
- 2. Make sure the electric inflater pump switch is off, and then take out the electric inflater pump power cable connector.
- Tyre repair kit: insert the tyre repair liquid cover into the card slot from the side
- 4. Loosen the valve dust cover and connect the tyre repair liquid connecting hose to tyre valve.
- Connect the electric inflater pump power cable connector with 12V power supply of the car to energize the pump.
- 6. Press the electric inflater pump switch button.
- Inflate the tyre to the pressure recommended on tyre pressure label.

- 8. Turn off the electric inflater pump and disconnect the electric inflater pump power cable.
- 9. Tyre repair kit: remove the tyre repair liquid.
- Remove the tyre repair liquid connecting hose from tyre valve and refit the valve dust cover.
- 11. Immediately drive 10min or 8km at ≤ 80km/h speed to allow the sealant to evenly apply and seal the tyre.

⚠ Warning!

- Park the vehicle in a safe place away from traffic before tyre repair. Shift to P gear.
- To repair tyres on a road, you must turn on the hazard warning lamp, wear a reflective vest, then get off the car and place the warning triangle at specified distance.

⚠ Warning!

When repairing a tyre with tyre repair kit:

- Tyre repair liquid is harmful and should be kept out of the reach of children.
- Prevent tyre repair liquid from splashing into your eyes.
- If you accidentally ingest tyre repair liquid, go to see a doctor immediately.
- If you accidentally come into contact with tyre repair liquid, wash the contact area with soap or water immediately.

Never stand next to the tyre when the electric inflater pump is working. If the tyre is cracked or uneven, turn off the electric inflation pump immediately and contact the Lotus Customer Care Centre for inspection as soon as possible.

After repairing a tyre with tyre repair kit:

- The car speed shall not exceed 80km/h.
- The driving distance of the vehicle should not exceed 200km, and go to the Lotus retailer as soon as possible to repair or replace the tyres.
- Avoid emergency steering and emergency braking.
- If you perceive unusual vibrations or noises while driving, slow down immediately and stop the car safely.

Caution!

- The electric inflation pump should not work for more than 10 minutes, otherwise it will be damaged due to overheating.
- After tyre inflation, be sure to install the valve dust cover to avoid damage to tyre valve.

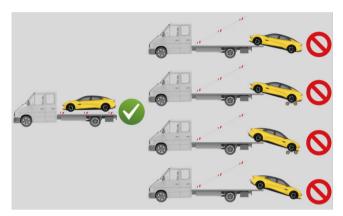
Check tyre pressure

- 1. Connect the electric inflation pump hose to the tyre valve.
- Connect the power cable connector of electric inflation pump with the on-board 12V power supply.

- **3.** Turn on the electric inflation pump switch and read the tyre pressure on pressure gauge:
 - If the tyre pressure is lower than 1.8 bar, it means that the tyre is not completely sealed, and it is not allowed to continue driving in this case.
 - If the tyre pressure exceeds 1.8 bar, inflate the tyre to the pressure recommended on tyre pressure label. If the tyre pressure is too high, use a bleed valve to release the air from the tyre.
- Turn off the electric inflation pump switch, and disconnect the electric inflation pump hose and the electric inflation pump power connector.

Having your car towed

Towing method



Vehicle towing method

The towing of a vehicle, if required, must be performed in accordance with local regulations. Do not tow a vehicle with its wheels on ground. When towing a vehicle, please power off the vehicle and transfer it to a platform trailer. The vehicle may be damaged if it is towed by incorrect towing methods or improper towing equipment.

Lotus recommends that you seek help from professional roadside assistance personnel for towing.

□ Caution!

- Before towing the vehicle, please contact your Lotus retailer to confirm if the vehicle has successfully disconnected the lowvoltage power supply. If towing a vehicle without disconnecting the low voltage, it will increase traction resistance and may damage the vehicle's drive motor.
- Given that the vehicle comes with an air suspension system, secure the vehicle by binding the tyres rather than the vehicle's body when towing, and avoid attaching ropes to the wheel rims alone.

Towing procedures

Towing mode

When the vehicle needs to be towed to a platform trailer, the towing mode should be activated first. The specific operation is as follows:

- 1. Ensure to keep the valid key in the vehicle. In case of a card key, it must be placed in the wireless charging induction area.
- 2. Open and close the driver door once.
- Press and hold the hazard warning lamp switch for more than 7s until the warning lamp on the instrument cluster performs BIT (the warning lamp comes on and goes out after a few seconds) once.

4. Shift the gear into N position.

You can exit towing mode in any of the following ways:

- Shift the gear to Park (P) position to lock the vehicle from the outside.
- Shift the gear to Drive (D) or Reverse (R) position to start driving the vehicle.

⚠ Warning!

- No person or object is allowed to be at the rear of the trailer when the vehicle is towed to a platform trailer.
- After the vehicle is towed to a platform trailer, please deactivate the towing mode and apply the EPB to ensure the parking safety of the vehicle.
- The driver and passengers must not stay in the vehicle when the vehicle is being towed.

Caution!

- The vehicle must be in towing mode before it is towed to a platform trailer.
- During transportation, ensure that the wheels will not rotate.

① Note!

Towing mode is only applicable when the vehicle is towed to a platform trailer.

Use a towing ring

- Open the boot lid of the vehicle and take out the towing ring from the boot storage box.
- 2. Open the cover plate of the towing ring mounting hole, which can be found on the right side of the front and rear bumpers.



Mounting hole of front bumper towing ring



Mounting hole of rear bumper towing ring

- 3. Screw the towing ring in place before the towing device is attached to the towing ring.
- 4. Before towing, please turn on the hazard warning lamp, and ensure that the vehicle is locked with no one inside.
- 5. Install the towing device onto the towing hook, and then tow the vehicle onto a platform trailer.
- 6. After the vehicle is towed to the designated position on the platform trailer, fix the wheels by using detent blocks and belts.

Caution!

 When installing the towing ring, be sure to screw it into the limit position to prevent vibration.

- To ensure safety, make sure that the towing direction of the towing device is consistent with the front-and-rear direction of the vehicle as possible when operating as described above.
- As this vehicle is equipped with air suspension, do not use the method of tying the body to fix the vehicle, only use the method of tying the tyres to fix the vehicle. Do not tie the vehicle wheels separately.
- Towing is allowed only when there is no safety risk to the vehicle. In case that the battery pack is deformed, leaks, smokes, etc., you should eliminate safety risks immediately.
- The hazard warning lights must be turned on when towing the vehicle.
- Do not tow the car for long distances when using the towing eye to avoid damaging the vehicle.

① Note!

- Removal of the towing ring can be accomplished by reversing the installation steps.
- If the vehicle is equipped with an electric towing hook, use it to tow another vehicle or allow the vehicle being towed from the rear of the vehicle.
- There is no mounting hole of rear bumper towing ring for vehicles equipped with an electric towing hook.

Getting out of a trapped situation

When your vehicle gets stuck in sand, snow, mud, etc., keeping the following procedures in mind will help you get out of the trouble:

- Observe the area in front of and behind the vehicle to make sure there are no obstructions.
- Turn the steering wheel left and right to rub away the sludge around the front wheels.
- Engage into D or R gear and move the vehicle forward and backward slowly.
- If you cannot get out of trouble after several attempts, please seek for a professional towing service.

⚠ Warning!

- When the vehicle is driven out of a pit by moving back and forth, it may suddenly rush forward or backward. During this process, attention must be paid at all times to avoid injury or death.
- Towing requires a slow start, and acceleration is not allowed until the tow rope is tensioned to tow the trapped vehicle.

① Note!

You can place wood blocks, stones or other materials under the front wheels to help increase the adhesive friction.

Emergency rescue procedures

PPE for rescue personnel

This vehicle is driven by high voltage batteries, which may result in worse conditions such as high voltage electricity leakage, damage to battery pack, leakage of chemical liquid, etc., in the event of serious collisions. Therefore, the emergency rescue personnel should wear personal protective equipment (PPE) for rescue personnel to ensure personal safety when rescuing on the vehicle.

- Wear safety goggles when operating high-voltage systems.
- Wear 1,000 V insulating gloves when touching high-voltage components.
- Use insulating tools when operating on high-voltage components.
- Prepare insulating protective hooks.
- Prepare a fire extinguisher suitable for lithium batteries.

⚠ Warning!

 A supervision mechanism should be followed when the emergency rescue personnel is operating on high-voltage components. It is stipulated that one person supervises and another person operates. Two or more operators working simultaneously is prohibited. When the operator is working, another person should not contact him.

 The emergency rescue personnel must not wear metal jewellery when performing rescue operations.



Acid and alkali resistant gloves



Insulating protective hook



Fire extinguisher



Fire blanket



High-voltage insulating gloves



Insulating cap



Safety goggles



Insulating shoes



Insulating tape



Insulating tools



The insulation tool is classified into five grades according to the heat resistance grade of the insulation material: A, E, B, F and H:

- Grade A: maximum allowable temperature ≤ 105°C. Winding temperature rise limit 60K.
- Grade E: maximum allowable temperature ≤ 120°C. Winding temperature rise limit 75K.
- Grade B: maximum allowable temperature ≤ 130°C. Winding temperature rise limit 80K.
- Grade F: maximum allowable temperature ≤ 155°C. Winding temperature rise limit 100K.
- Grade H: the maximum allowable temperature ≤ 180°C. Winding temperature rise limit 125K.

Release method of high-voltage system

You can deactivate the vehicle high voltage system by the steps below:

1. Stop the vehicle with the shift lever engaged into P.



Bonnet opening handle

- 2. Pull twice the bonnet opening handle successively to unlock the bonnet and close all doors and boot lid.
- Open the bonnet, remove and take out the trim panel from the bonnet.



Low-voltage MSD

4. Find the low-voltage MSD in bonnet and remove it, and the vehicle will deactivate the high-voltage system automatically.

⚠ Warning!

- Be sure to wear appropriate personal protective equipment when touching any high-voltage components.
- It is forbidden to touch the high-voltage battery components even though the high-voltage system has been released. Be sure to wear appropriate personal protective equipment if it is necessary to operate the high-voltage battery components.
- If the damage is found in the high-voltage components, be sure to wrap the damaged parts with the insulation tapes.

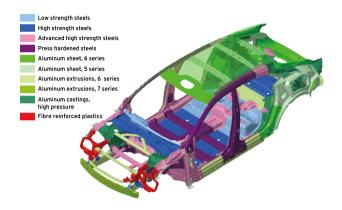
Caution!

- In emergency situations, the orange wiring harness on the MSD can be completely cut off to prevent the wiring harness from being grounded again, and the vehicle will automatically release the high-voltage system.
- In case of a vehicle collision, the high-voltage system will be automatically released.

No cutting area

High strength steel position

If the vehicle body needs to be cut for rescue, be sure to use the appropriate tools for this purpose and wear appropriate protective equipment.

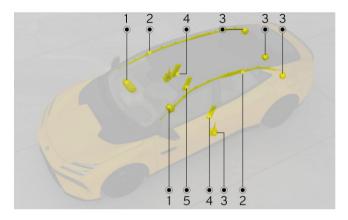


High strength steel position on body



High strength steel position on door

Airbag assembly

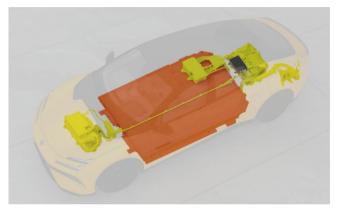


- 1. Front frontal airbag
- 2. Curtain airbag
- 3. Seat belt retractor
- 4. Front side airbag
- 5. Central airbag

To ensure the safety of rescuers, cutting is prohibited when the airbag is not deployed, but it can be done under the following conditions:

 When the front frontal and side airbags and curtain airbags have been deployed. When both low voltage and high voltage of the vehicle are released.

No cutting areas



No cutting areas



HV components or wiring harnesses can be cut when they are powered off.



No cutting in the high voltage battery area.



Do not cut the battery.

Rescue of wading vehicle

The extent of damage to wading vehicles may not be obvious, but there is a risk of leakage from high voltage systems. When rescuing wading vehicles, the rescue personnel must wear corresponding protective equipment to avoid injuries or casualties caused by electric shock.

⚠ Warning!

- The rescue personnel must wear appropriate protective equipment before touching high-voltage system components in water to prevent electric shock.
- After the rescue personnel remove the vehicle from the wading area, be sure to wait for the vehicle to dry completely before carrying out corresponding operations to prevent electric shock.

Rescue of vehicle on fire

When the vehicle catches fire, you should immediately determine the intensity of fire. If the fire is small and can be contained, the rescue personnel should employ an appropriate fire extinguishing method like dry powder fire extinguisher, carbon dioxide fire extinguisher or dry sand, to contain the flames.

If the fire is large or the battery is found to be severely squeezed or bent, the rescue personnel should contain the flames with large amounts of water without a break, and keep surrounding combustibles away from the burning vehicle as soon as possible so as to prevent the fire from spreading.

⚠ Warning!

- When the vehicle catches fire, the occupants in the vehicle should leave the vehicle as soon as possible, call the emergency call number according to the scene situation, and inform the rescue personnel that the vehicle on fire is a battery electric vehicle equipped with high-voltage components.
- If the rescue personnel find that there are occupants in the vehicle and the door cannot be opened during rescue, they can use sharp and hard tools to knock on the edge of the glass of the door to help the occupants trapped in the vehicle break the window to escape.

! Caution!

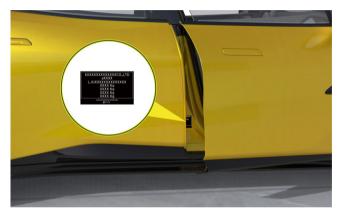
Fires in high-voltage components must be extinguished by using a fire extinguisher suitable for lithium batteries.



DATAI

Vehicle identification

Vehicle nameplate



Vehicle nameplate position

The vehicle nameplate is located below the right B-pillar and can be viewed when the front right door is opened.

The vehicle nameplate contains vehicle-related information.

VIN location

The VIN is the legal identification mark of a vehicle.



VIN at lower left corner of windscreen



VIN at the cross member of front right seat

The VIN at the cross member of front right seat is covered by carpet, and it can be found when the seat is moved backward.

VINs can also be found at the following locations:

- Left side of bonnet inner panel.
- Below the right B-pillar.
- Front right door inner panel.
- Right rear door inner panel.
- Right side of tailgate inner panel.
- Left wheel housing side member.

! Caution!

Sratching, erasing and covering up, concealing, altering or painting the VIN is prohibited.

How to read VIN

The VIN can be read by diagnostic tools as follows:

1. Connect the on-board diagnostic (OBD-II) socket;



OBD-II socket

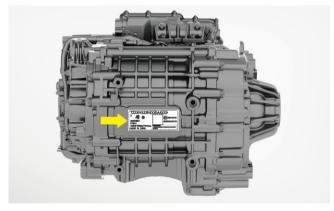
- Contact Lotus retailer to authorize the diagnostic system for the OBD-II socket:
- 3. Start the vehicle;
- 4. The diagnostic system automatically reads the VIN.

L Caution!

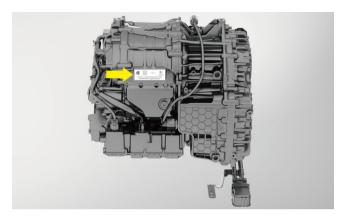
Do not connect other devices to the OBD-II socket. Unauthorized third parties may gain access to vehicle data, resulting in degraded performance of safety-related systems. Only equipment authorized by Lotus retailer are allowed to be connected with OBD-II socket.

Drive motor model and number

The drive motor model and number are indicated on the drive motor label, the right of the bonnet and the sheet metal on the left side of the boot lid.



Drive motor type 1 label position



Drive motor type 2 label position



Front drive motor label position



Rear drive motor label position

Microwave window



The microwave window is fixed horizontally in the centre, vertically upward position of the front windscreen. Information about the vehicle is stored in the microwave window. Please keep the front windscreen clean and prevent foreign objects from blocking the microwave window.

L Caution!

 It is forbidden to block the microwave window, otherwise it cannot be recognized by the electronic identification device outside the car. Avoid pasting the necessary traffic signs onto the microwave window.

Data

Dimension parameters

Vehicle outline dimensions				
Length (mm) 5,139				
Height (mm)	2,005			
Height (mm)	1,459			

Vehicle chassis parameters						
Front track (mm)	1,712					
Rear track (mm)	1,694					
Wheelbase (mm)	3,069					
Front overhang (mm)	945					
Rear overhang (mm)	1,125					

Performance parameters

Performance parameters							
Front drive motor model	TZ230XS225	TZ230XS225					
Rear drive motor model	TZ230XS225	TZ264XY000					
Maximum design speed (km/h)	250	256					
Maximum gradeability	40%	40%					

Weight parameters

Vehicle mass parameters						
	Seat	Brake system (former	Vehicle	Unlade n mass		ım total s (kg)
Vehicle model	capacit y (person)	ly named after caliper piston	unlade n mass (kg)	(maxim um total mass) (kg)	Front axle	Rear axle

Vehicle mass parameters						
		number)				
LD/ 4ESEL1 C/ 40000	4	4 pistons	2,580	2,980	1,400	1,730
LD/ 4ESEL1 C/ 41000	4	10 pistons	2,555	3,100	1,400	1,730
LD/ 4ESEL1 C/ 41000	4	6 pistons	2,580	3,100	1,400	1,730
LD/ 4ESEL1 C/ 42000	4	4 pistons	2,600	5,230	1,400	1,730
LD/ 4ESEL1 C/ 43000	4	10 pistons	2,580	5,350	1,400	1,730
LD/ 4ESEL1 C/ 43000	4	6 pistons	2,600	5,350	1,400	1,730

	Vehicle mass parameters					
LD/ 4ESEL1 C/ 44000	4	10 pistons	2,580	4,325	1,400	1,730
LD/ 4ESEL1 C/ 44000	4	6 pistons	2,600	4,325	1,400	1,730
LD/ 4ESEL1 C/ 50000	5	4 pistons	2,555	2,980	1,400	1,730
LD/ 4ESEL1 C/ 51000	5	10 pistons	2,530	3,100	1,400	1,730
LD/ 4ESEL1 C/ 51000	5	6 pistons	2,555	3,100	1,400	1,730
LD/ 4ESEL1 C/ 52000	5	4 pistons	2,580	5,230	1,400	1,730
LD/ 4ESEL1	5	10 pistons	2,555	5,350	1,400	1,730

	Vehicle mass parameters					
C/ 53000						
LD/ 4ESEL1 C/ 53000	5	6 pistons	2,580	5,350	1,400	1,730
LD/ 4ESEL1 C/ 54000	5	10 pistons	2,555	4,325	1,400	1,730
LD/ 4ESEL3 C/ 40000	4	4 pistons	2,580	2,980	1,400	1,730
LD/ 4ESEL3 C/ 41000	4	10 pistons	2,555	3,100	1,400	1,730
LD/ 4ESEL3 C/ 41000	4	6 pistons	2,580	3,100	1,400	1,730
LD/ 4ESEL3 C/41110	4	6 pistons /10 pistons	2,675	3,100	1,400	1,730

Vehicle mass parameters						
LD/ 4ESEL3 C/ 42000	4	4 pistons	2,600	5,230	1,400	1,730
LD/ 4ESEL3 C/ 43000	4	10 pistons	2,580	5,350	1,400	1,730
LD/ 4ESEL3 C/ 43000	4	6 pistons	2,600	5,350	1,400	1,730
LD/ 4ESEL3 C/ 44000	4	10 pistons	2,580	4,325	1,400	1,730
LD/ 4ESEL3 C/ 44000	4	6 pistons	2,600	4,325	1,400	1,730
LD/ 4ESEL3 C/44110	4	6 pistons /10 pistons	2,700	4,325	1,400	1,730
LD/ 4ESEL3	5	4 pistons	2,555	2,980	1,400	1,730

Vehicle mass parameters						
C/ 50000						
LD/ 4ESEL3 C/ 51000	5	10 pistons	2,530	3,100	1,400	1,730
LD/ 4ESEL3 C/ 51000	5	6 pistons	2,555	3,100	1,400	1,730
LD/ 4ESEL3 C/51110	5	6 pistons /10 pistons	2,650	3,100	1,400	1,730
LD/ 4ESEL3 C/ 52000	5	4 pistons	2,580	5,230	1,400	1,730
LD/ 4ESEL3 C/ 53000	5	10 pistons	2,555	5,350	1,400	1,730
LD/ 4ESEL3 C/ 53000	5	6 pistons	2,580	5,350	1,400	1,730

Vehicle mass parameters						
LD/ 4ESEL3 C/ 54000	5	10 pistons	2,555	4,325	1,400	1,730
LD/ 4ESEL3 C/ 54000	5	6 pistons	2,580	4,325	1,400	1,730
LD/ 4ESEL3 C/54110	5	6 pistons /10 pistons	2,675	4,325	1,400	1,730

Drive motor parameters

Drive motor parameters					
Мо	tor type	TZ230XS225	TZ264XY000		
Dr	Drive type		4×4 (AWD)		
Rated	Front motor	70	-		
power (kW)	Rear motor	70	180		

Drive motor parameters						
Rated	Front motor	5,000	_			
speed (rpm)	Rear motor	5,000	8,595			
Rated	Front motor	135	_			
torque (N.m)	Rear motor	135	200			
Peak	Front motor	225	_			
power (kW)	Rear motor	225	450			
Rated	Front motor	17,000	_			
speed (rpm)	Rear motor	17,000	14,000			
Peak	Front motor	355	_			
torque (N.m)	Rear motor	355	630			

High voltage battery parameters

High voltage battery parameters				
Туре	Ternary lithium ion battery			
Total storage capacity (kWh)	102			

High voltage battery parameters					
Rated voltage (V)	705				
Rated capacity (Ah)	145				
Cell dimension (mm)	203.33 (±3) ×46.22 (±1) × 103.34 (±2)				
Cell weight (kg)	2.23±0.15				
Outline dimension of assembly (mm)	2,268×1,580×125				
Assembly weight (kg)	620				

Seat parameters

5-seat vehicle						
Item	Front seat adjustment	Rear middle seat adjustment	Rear side seats adjustment			
Set seat fore and aft position (mm)	Adjust forward by 188 mm, and adjust backward by 72 mm	Not adjustable	Not adjustable			

5-seat vehicle							
Item	Front seat adjustment	Rear middle seat adjustment	Rear side seats adjustment				
Set backrest angle (°)	Adjust forward by 28.5 mm, and adjust backward by 44.3 mm	Adjust backward by 7°, and lay down after being unlocked at high position	Adjust backward by 7°, and lay down after being unlocked at high position				
Seat headrest adjustme nt (mm)	Adjust up by 40 mm	Up and down arc adjustment	Adjust up by 30 mm				
Set seat height position (mm)	Adjust up by 32.5 mm, and adjust down by 32.5 mm	Not adjustable	Not adjustable				
Set seat cushion inclinatio n (°)	Adjust up by 13.76 mm, and adjust down by 15.05 mm	Not adjustable	Not adjustable				
Set fore and aft position of leg support (mm)	Adjust forward by 50 mm	Not adjustable	Not adjustable				

	4-seat vehicle*						
Item	Front seat adjustment	Rear side seats adjustment					
Set seat fore and aft position (mm)	Adjust forward by 188 mm, and adjust backward by 72 mm	Not adjustable					
Set backrest angle (°)	Adjust forward by 28.5 mm, and adjust backward by 44.3 mm	Adjust forward by 8 mm, and adjust backward by 8 mm					
Seat headrest adjustment (mm)	Adjust up by 40 mm	Not adjustable					
Set seat height position (mm)	Adjust up by 32.5 mm, and adjust down by 32.5 mm	Not adjustable					
Set seat cushion inclination (°)	Adjust up by 13.76 mm, and adjust down by 15.05 mm	Not adjustable					
Set fore and aft position of leg support (mm)	Adjust forward by 50 mm	Adjust forward by 50 mm					

Wheel alignment parameters

Wheel alignment parameters						
	Wheel camber (')	-35±25				
Front wheel	Toe-in angle (′)	4.8±3				
	kingpin caster angle (°)	5.1±0.6				
Rear	Wheel camber (')	-48±20				
wheel	Toe-in angle (')	13±3				

Rim and tyre specifications

Rim and tyre specifications									
Spec atio		Fron t: 255/ 45 R20	Rear : 285 /40 R20	Fron t: 265/ 40 R21*	Rear: 305/ 35 R21*	Fron t: 265/ 40 ZR21 *	Rear: 305/ 35 ZR21 *	Fron t: 265/ 35 R22*	Rear: 305 /30 R22 *
Pre ssu	Ha If	2.6	2.6	2.6	2.6	2.6	2.6	2.8	2.8

	Rim and tyre specifications								
	loa d								
re(b ar)	Fu II Ioa d	2.9	3.2	2.9	3.2	2.9	3.2	3.1	3.4
Whe		9.0J ×20	11.0J ×20	9.5J ×21	11.5J ×21	9.5J ×21	11.5J ×21	9.5J ×22	11.5J ×22
Wh eel dyn s ami c bala nce (inn cer/ cout er cit dua s l unb alan ce) (g)	In ne r sid e of fro nt wh eel	≤8	-	≤10	_	≤10	-	≤10	_
	Ou ter sid e of fro nt wh eel	≤8	_	≤10	_	≤10	_	≤10	_

	Rim and tyre specifications									
	In ne r sid e of re ar wh eel	-	≤8	-	≤10	_	≤10	_	≤10	
	Ou ter sid e of re ar wh	-	≤8	-	≤10	_	≤10	_	≤10	
Who		ET27	ET37	ЕТ33	ET46	ET33	ET4 6	ET33	ET4 6	

⚠ Warning!

 Due to differences in wheel assembly, do not change the position of any wheel assembly to avoid vehicle damage or accidents. For replacement, please go to the Lotus retailer. Driving on an under-inflated tyre causes the tyre to overheat and can lead to tyre failure.

Braking parameters

E	Braking parameters							
Brake system (named by the number of front brake calliper pistons)	4-piston brake system	6-piston brake system*	10-piston brake system*					
Туре	Hydraulic brake	Hydraulic brake	Hydraulic brake					
Assist type	Electric assist	Electric assist	Electric assist					
Brake pedal free travel (mm)	≤20	≤20	≤20					
Thickness of front new brake disc (mm)	34	40	40					
Front brake disc wear limit (mm)	32	38	When the carbon content or weight is below the minimum value indicated					

Braking parameters					
			on the part, replace the brake discs		
Thickness of rear new brake disc (mm)	29	29	32		
Rear brake disc wear limit (mm)	27	27	When the carbon content or weight is below the minimum value indicated on the part, replace the brake discs		
Thickness of front new brake pad (Note: thickness of friction material) (mm)	Approx. 8.2	Approx. 8.6	Approx. 12.2		
Front brake pad wear limit (Note: thickness of friction material) (mm)	2.7	2.7	3.2		

Braking parameters						
Thickness of rear new brake pad (Note:	Approx Q.F.	Approx 0.5	Service brake pad: about 11			
thickness of friction material) (mm)	Approx. 9.5	Approx. 9.5	Parking brake pad: about 5.5			
Rear brake pad wear limit (Note: thickness	2.7	2.7	Service brake pad: 3			
of friction material) (mm)	2,1	2.1	Parking brake pad: 1.7			
Parking brake type	EPB	EPB	EPB			

Fluid specification and capacity

	Fluid specification	and capacity
Name	Model	Filling amount
Single- speed reducer lubricant	TOTAL F20-03863K	1.24L

Fluid specification and capacity						
Drive motor Iubricant	Shell E-Fluids E6	2.8L (transmission side); 2.2L (motor side)				
A/C refrigeran t	R-1234yf	900±20g				
Brake fluid	BASF HN 404 (Class 6)	4-piston braking system /6- piston braking system*	850±30ml			
		10-piston braking system*	750±30ml			

INDEX

Numerics		Automatic speed limit alarm (ASLA) ······	249
12V power supply ·····	171	Autonomous emergency braking (AEB)	238 271
A		В	
Acoustic vehicle alerting system (AVAS)	203	Battery ·····	327
Active air dam · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	211	Before you drive ······	195
Active grille shutter (AGS)	215	Blind spot detection (BSD)	255
Active rear diffuser*	212	Bluetooth settings	288
Active rear spoiler	203	Bonnet	86
Adaptive cruise control (ACC)	226	Brake assist system (BAS) · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	264
Air outlet	164	Brake fluid ······	333
Air suspension ······	209	Braking parameters	396
Airbag deployment conditions	35	Buttons on steering wheel ······	95
Android Auto ·····	289	Dations on steering wheel	, 0
Anti roll-over program (ARP) · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	264	C	
Apple CarPlay · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	291	Change of ownership	326
Application management	294	Charging cable	54
Auto hold ·····	220	Charging guidance	

Charging preparation	54	E	
Child passenger safety guide	37		
Child safety lock ······	48	Electrical pad wear indicator (EPWI) ·····	265
Child safety seat ·····	38	Electronic parking brake (EPB) ·····	221
Comfortable brake stop (CST)	261	Electronic stability control (ESC) ······	261
Contact Lotus ·····	15	Emergency call ·····	346
Coolant	332	Energy recovery	219
D		Evasive maneuver assist (EMA)*	242
D		Event data recorder (EDR)	14
Daily maintenance ·····	318	Exterior lighting control	113
Desktop	285	Exterior maintenance	337
Dimension parameters	389	F	
Disabling of passenger front airbag	36		
Door opening warning (DOW)	259	Fluid specification and capacity	397
Doors ·····	70	Four-zone air-conditioner control system	154
Drive mode ·····	206	Front centre armrest ·····	184
Drive motor model and number	387	Front cross traffic assist (FCTA)	244
Drive motor parameters	392	Front of vehicle ·····	23
Driver fatigue detection ·····	277	Front seat adjustment	141
Driver's tools	369	Function of airbag ·····	33
Driving mode ·····	214	Function of seat belt	28

G		Interior lighting control	120
Garage ······Garage door opener(HomeLink)* ······Garage door opener(HomeLink)* ·······Garage for traffic accidents ····································	286 138 346	Interior maintenance Internal J	34 ⁻ 24
н		Jump starting ·····	353
Hazard warning lights ····································	348 110	Key introduction	()
High voltage battery parameters ····································	393 349	L	62
Highway assist (HWA)*	232264386	Lane keeping assist (LKA) Launch control* Life detection and care	246 20°
I		Location of airbag ······	35
Indicators and warning lamps Information reading Inside mirror adjustment	104 386 138	Lotus intelligent dynamic control (LIDC) Lotus security system V	265 50
Inspection and replacement of wiper blade	335 100	Microwave window Multimedia	388 295

N		Post impact control (PIC)	267
Navigation Necessity of maintenance Network settings No cutting area Notes to users	301 318 287 379 282	Power on/off	196 376 343 13
0		Quick temporary tyre repair	370
OTA system upgrade ·····	15	R	
OTA system upgrade operation ····································	310 127	Radio information ·····	
P	121	Rear centre armrest	185 253
Panoramic sunroof* ·····	167	Rear cross traffic alert (RCTA)	257 314
Parking assist (PA) ·····	267	Rear of vehicle ······	23
Parking comfort ·····	190	Rear seat adjustment ·····	144
Pedestrian protection control	88	Record of ownership change	326
Performance parameters ·····	389	Release method of high-voltage system ······	378
Phone ·····	299	Remote parking assist (RPA)* ······	275
Pollen filter ·····	335	Replace fuse	355

Rescue of vehicle on fire	381	Steering mode ·····	213
Rescue of wading vehicle	381	Steering wheel	95
Rim and tyre specifications	395	Steering wheel heating	99
S		Storage and maintenance	326
<u> </u>		Storage device ·····	175
Safe parking ·····	218	Sun visors and vanity mirrors	174
Scan tool ·····	386	т	
Scheduled maintenance	319	•	
Seasonal tyres ·····	330	Tailgate ·····	89
Seat heating ·····	150	Tire introduction	19
Seat massage*	149	Towing method · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	373
Seat parameters	393	Towing mode* ·····	186
Seat ventilation*	152	Towing procedures	373
Sensors and cameras	221	Traction control system (TCS) ·····	263
Service record	322	Tyre chain ·····	33
Set up ·····	306	Tyre pressure monitoring system	216
Shift operation ·····	199	Tyre wear ·····	329
Shortcut panel ·····	285	U	
Sound ·····	296	<u> </u>	
Start ·····	198	USB-C port ·····	172
Start-up guidance ·····	284	User notice ······	12

Using the seat belts correctly	29 Wireless device charging 168
V	<u> </u>
Vehicle accessories ······	14
Vehicle lifting	352
Vehicle nameplate 3	385
Vehicle scrapping ······	13
Vehicle use preference funciton 2	286
VIN location	385
Visual parking assist (VPA) 2	269
Voice 2	297
W	
Warning triangle 3	349
Warranty coverage 3	320
Warranty period · · · · 3	320
Weight parameters 3	389
Wheel alignment parameters 3	395
Windows ·····	82
Windscreen washer fluid 3	334
Wiper control 1	124

LOTUS®